



# Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

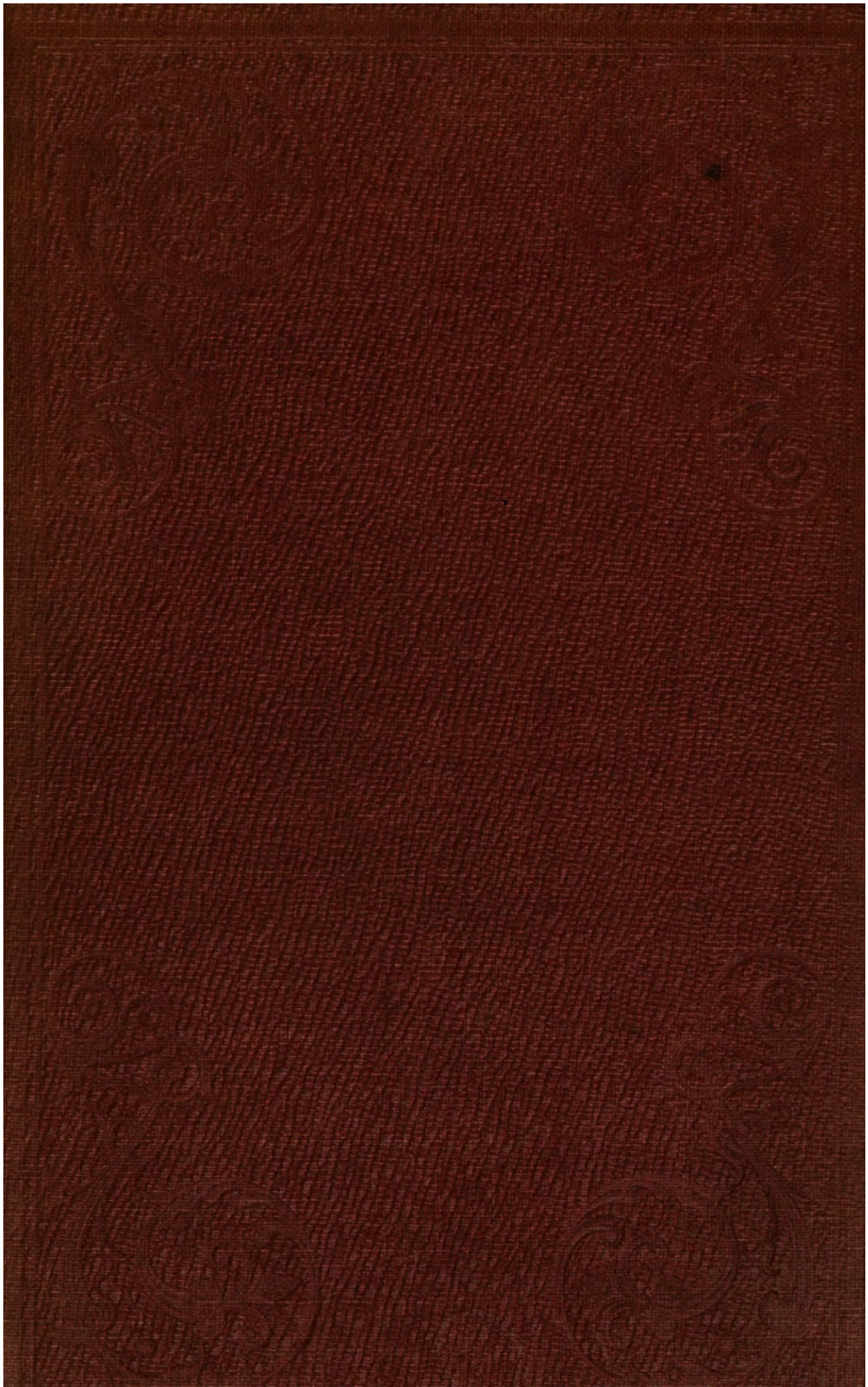
This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

<http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks>



This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.



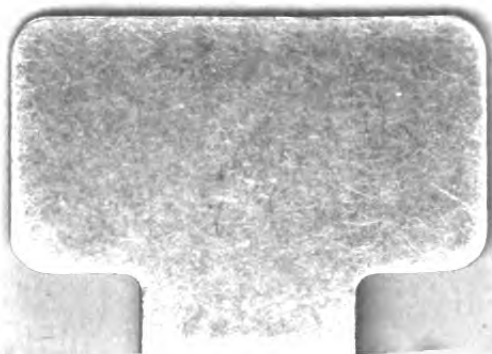


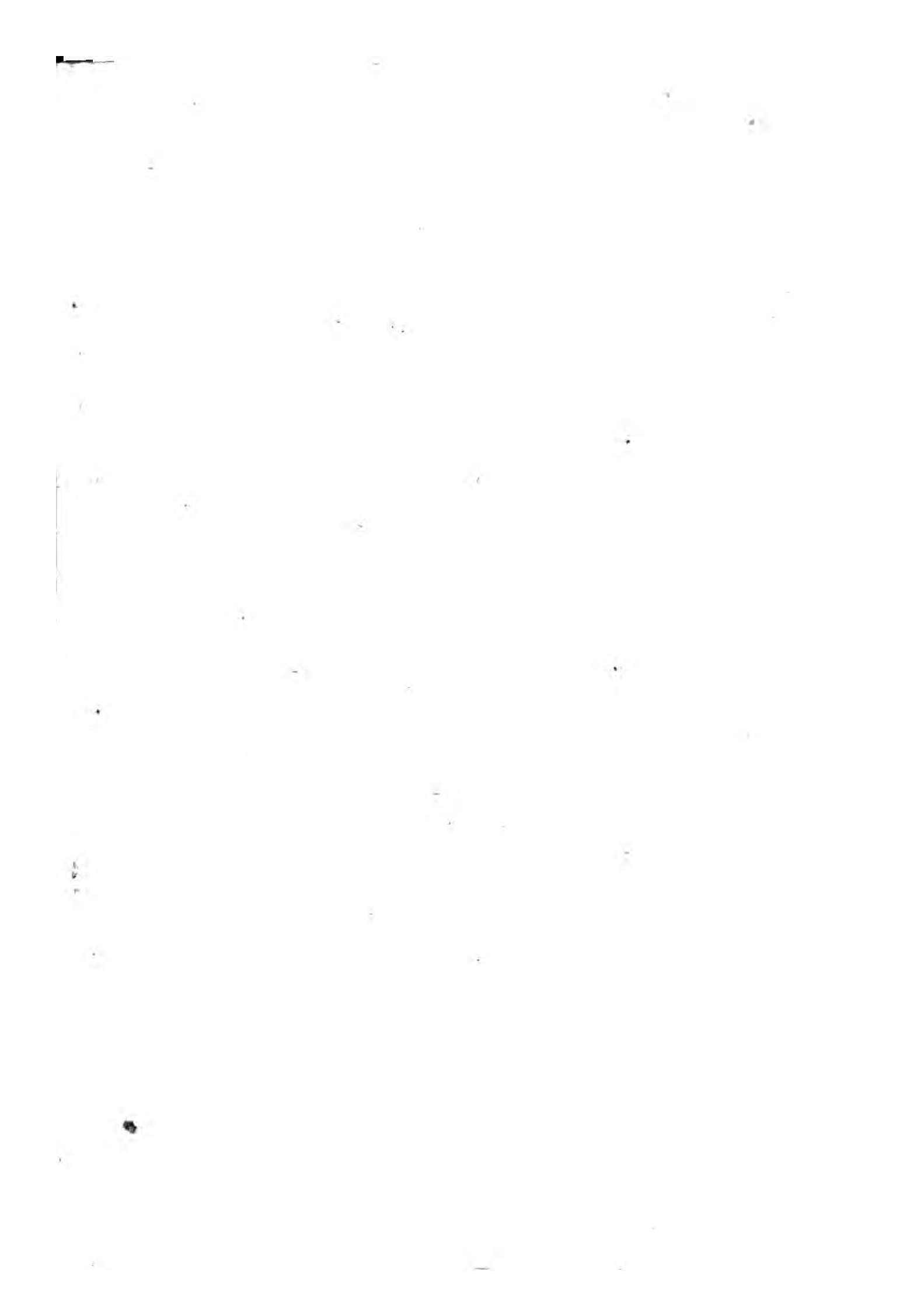
my

7-

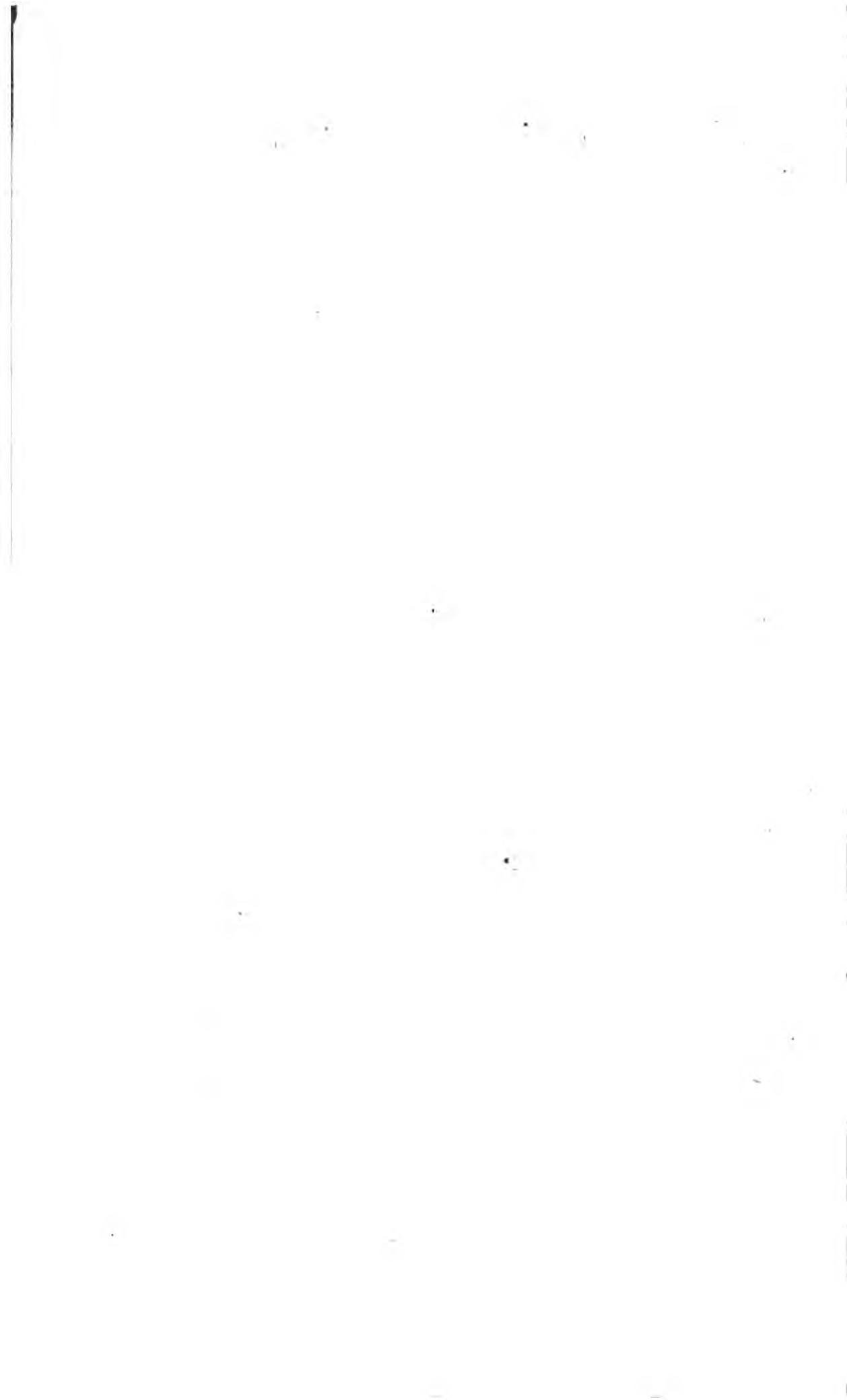
**PRESENTED TO THE UNIVERSITY  
BY THE RHODES TRUSTEES**

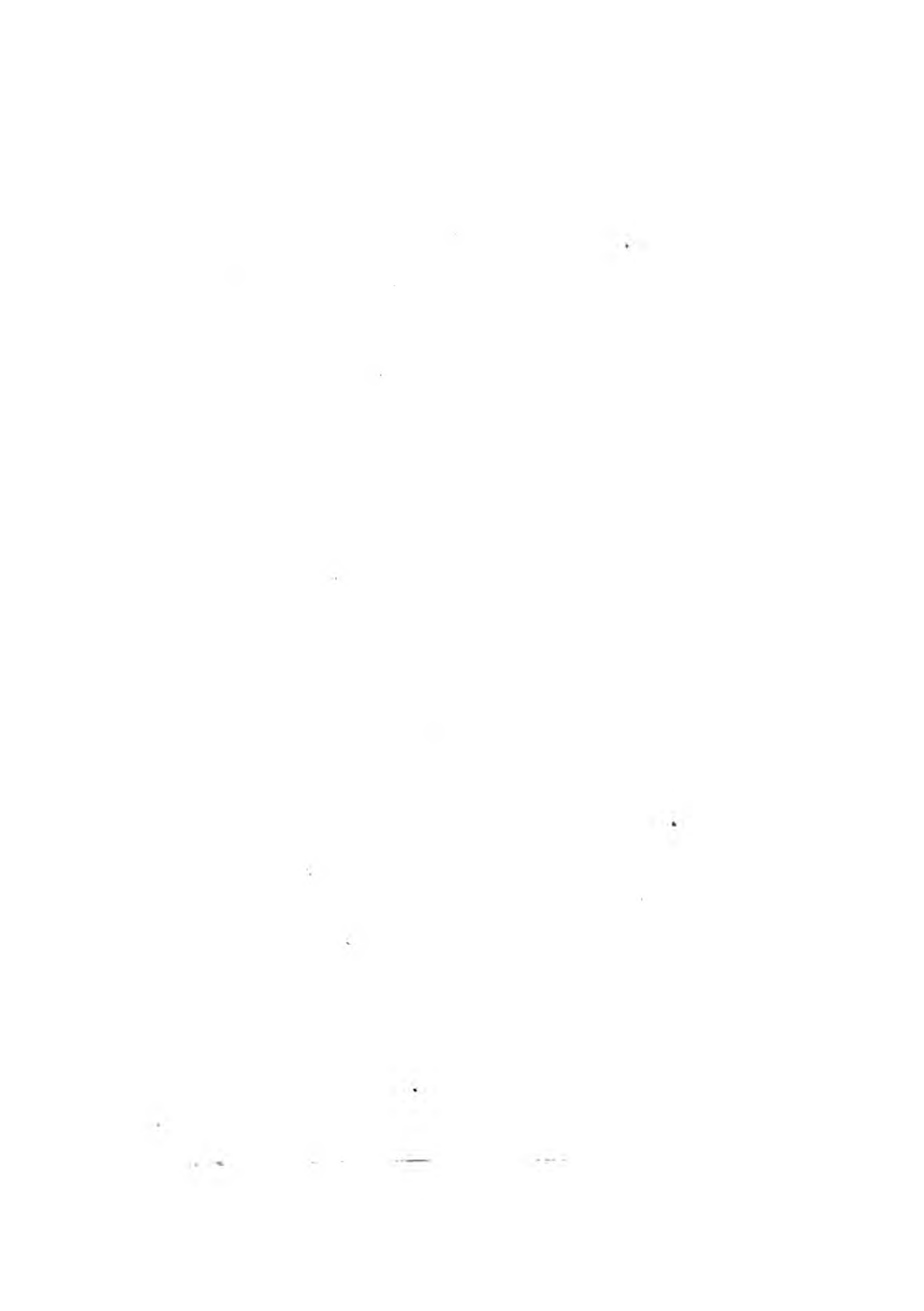
610.11 217

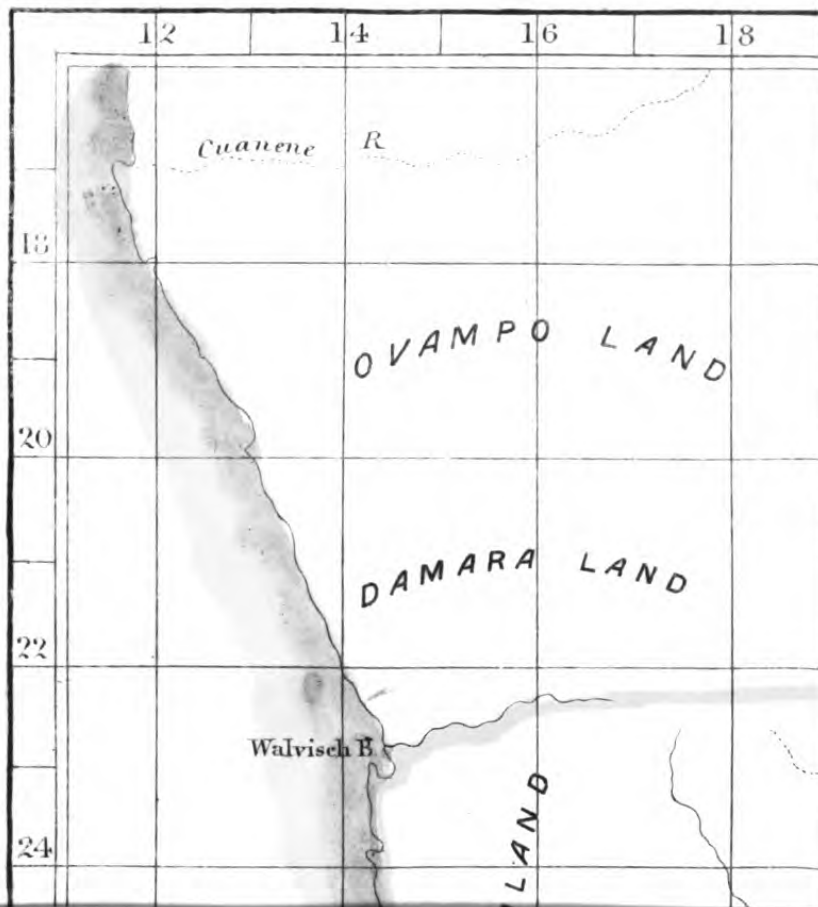












MANUAL

OF

SOUTH AFRICAN GEOGRAPHY,

FORMING

A COMPANION TO THE MAP OF SOUTH AFRICA TO  
16° SOUTH LATITUDE.

INTENDED FOR THE

USE OF THE UPPER CLASSES IN GOVERNMENT SCHOOLS  
AND CANDIDATES FOR THE CIVIL SERVICE.

BY

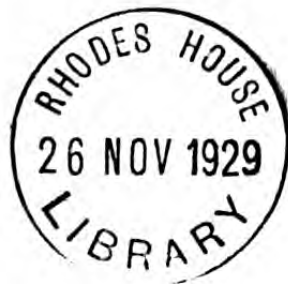
HENRY HALL, R.E.D.

CAPE TOWN:

SAUL SOLOMON AND CO., STEAM PRINTING OFFICE.

1859.





CAPE TOWN:  
SAUL SOLOMON AND CO., STEAM PRINTING OFFICE,  
LONGMARKET-STREET

## P R E F A C E .

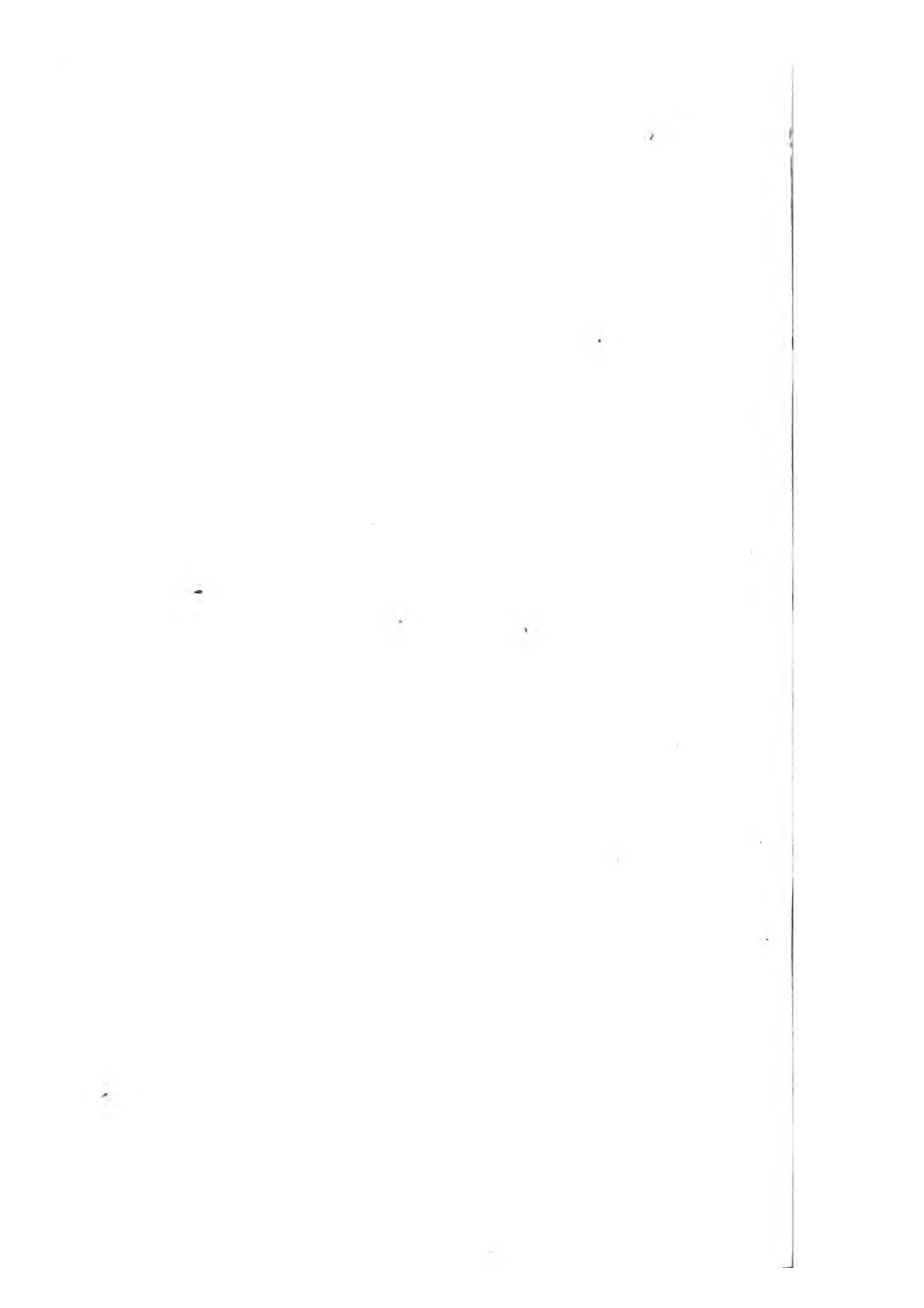
---

THE want of an elementary work on the geography of South Africa, for the use of schools and candidates for the public service, being much felt, I, at the request of the Honorable R. W. Rawson, Esq., colonial secretary, undertook the compilation of a small work on the subject, to which, at the suggestion of Dr. Innes, the superintendent-general of education, have been added some chapters on its physical geography, as tending to make the work more complete. In the Appendix, I have collected together whatever trustworthy data, in the shape of statistical, physical, and other tables, I could find available; and in a table of chronological events, the student may find an outline of the political history and progress of geographical discovery in South Africa, which may serve as a guide to a deeper study of these, to Cape colonists, interesting subjects.

I hope, therefore, that this little work, which has no claim to originality, and is founded rather on the labors of others, may be found to have the merit of collecting, in a convenient and portable form, that information of the "land we live in" which is now to be sought for scattered through the pages of various works not always accessible to young readers.

I would now beg to return my best thanks to all who have assisted me in the compilation of this little work; but I deem it my duty to express my particular obligations to Messrs. T. Maclear and C. Fairbridge, and Mr. Justice Watermeyer. Indeed, all to whom I applied for information have promptly afforded it.

HENRY HALL.



# CONTENTS.

## PART I.

### GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF SOUTH AFRICA.

CHAP.	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1
II. SUBDIVISIONS . . . . .	2
III. OCEANS, BAYS, CAPES, ETC. . . . .	3
IV. RIVERS AND LAKES . . . . .	5
V. MOUNTAINS AND HILLS . . . . .	7
VI. DESERTS AND KARROOS . . . . .	8
VII. FORESTS, ARABLE LANDS, ETC. . . . .	10
VIII. NATURAL CURIOSITIES—GEOLOGY, ETC. . . . .	11
IX. MANKIND OF SOUTH AFRICA . . . . .	13
X. RELIGIONS . . . . .	14
XI. GOVERNMENTS . . . . .	15
XII. ZOOLOGY. . . . .	16
XIII. MERCANTILE PRODUCTIONS. . . . .	17
XIV. CLIMATE, HEALTH OF INHABITANTS, ETC. . . . .	17

## PART II.

### DESCRIPTION OF DIVISIONS OF SOUTH AFRICA.

CHAP.	PAGE
I. CAPE COLONY . . . . .	19
II. DESCRIPTION OF DIVISIONS OF CAPE COLONY . . . . .	
WESTERN DISTRICTS . . . . .	22
EASTERN DISTRICTS. . . . .	31



## PART II—(continued).

CHAP.		PAGE
III.	CHIEF CITIES AND TOWNS . . . . .	38
IV.	HISTORY OF CAPE COLONY . . . . .	40
V.	JUDICIAL AND OTHER INSTITUTIONS . . . . .	41
VI.	PUBLIC WORKS—ROADS, ETC. . . . .	42
VII.	BRITISH KAFFRARIA . . . . .	43
VIII.	NATAL . . . . .	46
BOER REPUBLICS:		
IX.	ORANGE FREE STATE (LATE SOVEREIGNTY) . . . . .	49
X.	TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC . . . . .	52
REGIONS INHABITED BY NATIVE TRIBES:		
XI.	KAFIRLAND PROPER OR KAFFRARIA . . . . .	55
XII.	REGIONS BEYOND NATAL, INHABITED BY KAFIR RACES . . . . .	58
XIII.	GREAT NAMAQUALAND . . . . .	60
XIV.	KORANNAS AND BUSHMEN . . . . .	63
XV.	GRIQUAS AND GRIQUALAND . . . . .	64
XVI.	REGIONS INHABITED BY BETJOUANA TRIBES . . . . .	66
XVII.	BASUTULAND . . . . .	70
XVIII.	DAMARA AND OVAMPOLAND . . . . .	72
XIX.	KALIHARI DESERT . . . . .	74
XX.	CONCLUDING REMARKS . . . . .	77

## PART III.

## SKETCH OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF SOUTH AFRICA.

CHAP.		
I.	GENERAL OUTLINE OF SUBJECT . . . . .	81
II.	FORM, DISTRIBUTION, ETC., OF THE LAND OF SOUTH AFRICA . . . . .	83
III.	ELEVATED PLAINS, DESERTS, ETC. . . . .	87
IV.	EXPLANATION OF WATER-SHED LINE . . . . .	88
V.	RIVERS . . . . .	93
VI.	LAKES, SALT-PANS, ETC. . . . .	96
VII.	GEOLOGY. . . . .	99
VIII.	HYDROLOGY. . . . .	104
IX.	CLIMATE, ETC. . . . .	105
X.	FORM AND DISTRIBUTION OF ANIMAL AND VEGETABLE LIFE . . . . .	116
XI.	DISTRIBUTION OF PLANTS—PHYTOGEOGRAPHY . . . . .	124

CONTENTS.

vii

APPENDIX.

NO.		PAGE
I.	TABLE OF GEOGRAPHICAL NOMENCLATURE . . . . .	131
II.	HEIGHT OF PRINCIPAL MOUNTAINS . . . . .	133
II A.	TABLE OF RIVERS . . . . .	136
II B.	METEOROLOGICAL OBSERVATIONS . . . . .	148
III.	TABLE OF CHRONOLOGICAL EVENTS . . . . .	152
IV.	REVENUE . . . . .	180
V.	IMPORTS AND EXPORTS . . . . .	180
VI.	DISTANCES FROM CAPE TOWN . . . . .	182



MANUAL  
OF  
SOUTH AFRICAN GEOGRAPHY.

---

PART I.  
GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF SOUTH AFRICA

---

CHAPTER I.—INTRODUCTION.

1. THE great continent of AFRICA is shaped like a vast triangle, with its apex to the south, and connected with that of Asia by a narrow sandy belt of desert, called the Isthmus of Suez, nearly in the same way as the Cape peninsula is connected with the rest of Africa by the sandy isthmus of the Cape flats. In this part of Africa lies Egypt, and the classic shores of the Mediterranean; and all young readers of the Bible will recollect the exodus of the Jewish people from Africa and across the Red Sea through the wilderness of Sinai to the Holy Land.

2. Far away to the south, and five thousand miles distant from Egypt, the great continent of Africa comes nearly to a point. It is of the regions round this point, which form what is called South Africa, that this little book treats,—comprising all the countries south of the Tropic of Capricorn, and a belt of the region north of it to 16° of south latitude, or from where, in the valley of Zambezi, the Negro nations of



Central Africa are replaced by the Kafirs, Betjouana, and Hottentot races, and further south, where descendants of our Dutch and English forefathers have founded the settlement of the Cape colony, the Boer republics, and Natal.

*Questions.*—What continent do we inhabit? What is its shape? How is it connected with Asia, and the rest of the old world? What remarkable country known in Scripture history lies in Africa? Where is South Africa situated? What races inhabit Central Africa? What division do the descendants of the white races inhabit? What nations replace the Negroes of South Africa.

#### CHAPTER II.—SUBDIVISIONS.\*

3. The subdivisions of South Africa comprise—(1) British colonies ruled by the Queen of England: *a* Cape colony, *b* British Kaffraria, *c* Natal, inhabited by descendants of European origin, chiefly speaking the English and Dutch languages; (2) Independent republics of emigrant boers: *a* Orange Free State, *b* Transvaal Republic, speaking the Dutch language; (3) Kafirland, inhabited by tribes speaking Kafir or Zulu language and its varieties: *a* between British Kaffraria and Natal, *b* east and north of Natal; (4) Betjouanaland, inhabited by various Betjouana tribes, speaking Setjouana language and its dialects; (5) Basutoland, a mountain region between Orange Free State, Kafirland, and Natal, inhabited by Basutus and mixed tribes of Betjouana descent; (6) Griqualand, between Free State, Betjouanaland, and Cape colony, inhabited by tribes of bastard Hottentots and Korannas; (7) Great Namaqualand, north of the Cape colony, inhabited by tribes of Korannas, Bushmen, and Namaquas, speaking dialects of Hottentot language, and extending west to the Atlantic Ocean and east to the Kalihari desert; (8) Damara and Ovampoland, north of Namaqualand, inhabited by tribes speaking Ovampo dialects; (9) Portuguese colonies on the east coast, between Delagoa Bay and Quillimane.

*Questions.*—What are the colonies ruled by the Queen of England in South Africa? What are the independent republics? How may Kafirland be divided? Where is Basutoland? What tribes inhabit great Namaqualand? To what ocean does Great Namaqualand extend? Where are the Portuguese colonies situated?

\* These subdivisions are not formed altogether by the physical features of the country, but are rather political and ethnological.

CHAPTER III.—OCEANS, BAYS, CAPES, ISLANDS, AND COAST  
IN GENERAL.

4. The coast of South Africa on a large scale forms the truncated apex or point of a vast triangle, having its most southerly point in Cape L'Agulhas, latitude,  $34^{\circ} 49'$ , longitude  $20^{\circ} 0' 40''$ .

5. *Oceans*.—It is washed on the west side by the Southern Atlantic, and on the south and east by the Southern Indian Ocean.

6. *Islands*.—No large islands are found near the coast of South Africa, but there are many small rocky islets. Going round the coast from the north-west to the north-east, we find Ichaboe Island and Possession Islands, both off the coast of Great Namaqualand, famous for their guano deposits; Dassen Islands, between Table and Saldanha Bays; Robben Island, in Table Bay; St. Croix Islands (where Bartholomew Diaz first landed and planted the cross), and Bird Islands, in Algoa Bay; Basarouta Isle, off the east coast of Sofala. None of the islets off the coast of South Africa are inhabited.

7. *Capes*.—The principal capes are: north of Orange River, Point Pelican or Walvisch Bay, Damaraland; and, south of it, Point or Cape Voltas, near mouth of Orange River; Point Paternoster, near Saldanha Bay; Cape of Good Hope, south extreme end of Cape peninsula, and west extremity of False Bay; Cape Hanglip, east extremity of False Bay; Cape L'Agulhas, south point of African continent; Cape St. Blaize, west horn of Mossel Bay; Cape St. Frances; Cape Recife, west point of Algoa Bay; Point Padrone, east point of Algoa Bay; Fish River Point, west of mouth of Great Fish River; Point Natal; Cape Calatto; Delagoa Bay.

8. *Peninsulas*.—The only well-marked peninsula in South Africa is the Cape peninsula, from Table Mountain to Cape Point.

9. *Bays*.—On the west coast, from north to south, are Walvisch Bay and Angra Pequina, coast of Great Namaqualand; Port Nolloth, south of Orange River; Hondeklip Bay; Donkin's Bay and Lambert's Bay, between Olifant's River and St. Helena Bay; St. Helena Bay; Saldanha Bay; Table Bay, the port of Cape Town and Western Province; Hout's Bay. On the south and east coast—False Bay, including Simon's and Gordon's Bays, the first, the principal naval station of the colony; Walker's Bay; Struys Bay; St. Sebastian's Bay;

Visch Bay; Vleesch Bay; Mossel Bay; Plettenberg Bay; St. Frances' Bay; Algoa Bay and Port Elizabeth, the port of the Eastern Province; Port Natal, the port of Natal colony; Delagoa Bay; Sofala Bay. Many of these bays are very open and exposed, and dangerous in certain seasons for the purposes of anchorage. Saldanha Bay is the largest and safest, but the surrounding country is, unfortunately, deficient in fresh water. Waterloo, Mazeppa, and Shepstone's Bays, on the east coast, are open roadsteads, unsheltered from the south-east winds.

10. *Coast line.*—From Walvisch Bay, on the north-west coast, to Table Bay, the coast is generally low and sandy, except in a few places where the mountains approach the coast; as in the neighborhood of Saldanha Bay, &c. From Table Bay eastward, the coast is generally studded with sharp rocks, and bounded by chains of mountains which approach the coast, and form easily-distinguished landmarks. Far to the north-east are extensive flats, and a low, muddy tract along the shore, very unhealthy, extending from St. Lucia Bay to the Zambesi.

11. *Currents.*—A great current sets round the Cape coast from east to west, at the rate of about two and a half miles an hour, called the Agulhas current, from a bank or shoal so named, which extends to a distance of about sixty miles parallel to the south coast. North of this bank, between it and the coast, mariners can find bottom, or what is called soundings; south of it is deep water. Different minor currents, often running in a contrary direction, or from west to east, occur on many points of the coast.

12. *Light-houses.*—On the coast of South Africa there are light-houses at the entrance to Table Bay, on Cape Agulhas, Cape Recife, and the Bird Islands (Algoa Bay); also at the mouth of the Buffalo. One is now in progress of erection on the Roman Rock, in Simon's Bay, and another on Cape Point.

*Questions.*—What oceans wash the shores of South Africa? Are there any large islands near the coast? Name any remarkable small ones? What cape forms the southern point of the African continent? What forms that of the Cape peninsula? What is the largest and safest bay in South Africa? What bay is the port of the Western Province? Which is that of Natal? What is the nature of the coast line on the west coast? What of that on the east coast? Is there any large peninsula in South Africa? What great current is there along the coast? Are any of the islets off the South African coast inhabited? Can the sea be fathomed north of the Agulhas bank? Are soundings found south of it? What light-houses have we on the coast?



## CHAPTER IV.—RIVERS AND LAKES.

13. The drainage of South Africa is effected by two systems of rivers,\* the one running into the Atlantic, the other into the South Indian Ocean. The high ridge dividing the waters of these two river systems is called the water-shed line, and may be easily laid down by the pupil on any skeleton map of South Africa.

14. The principal rivers are (going from north-west to north-east round the Cape of Good Hope): *a* discharging into the Atlantic Ocean—The Cuanene or Nourse River, little known, draining Ovampoland; Zwakap River, draining Damaraland; the Orange or Gariiep River, with its tributaries—the Vaal, Caledon, Kraai, Zeekoe, Hart, Malapo, Hartebeest, and Oup or Borradaile Rivers, draining a great part of the Cape colony, Great Namaqualand, the Orange Free State, Basutoland, Betjouanaland, and the Kalihari desert, in all, about 400,000 square miles; Buffel's River, draining Little Namaqualand; Olifant's River, draining the Olifant's River valley and Bokkeveld Karroo, Hantam, &c.; Berg River, draining Malmesbury and Paarl districts; Zout River, draining Koeberg and Tigerberg, enters the sea near Cape Town. *b* Rivers running into Southern Ocean—Eerste River, into False Bay; Bot and Palmiet Rivers, east of Cape Hanglip; Breede River, and its tributary Zonder Einde River, draining Caledon and parts of Swellendam and Worcester divisions; Gauritz, including the Touw, Ghamka, Dwyka, and Olifant's Rivers, draining Great Karroo, Little Karroo, and Kammanassie, in the Worcester, Beaufort, and George divisions; Kromme River, entering the sea at St. Frances' Bay; Ghamtoos or Grote River, draining eastern Great Karroo and behind Sneeuwberg to near Richmond; Zwartkops, north of Port Elizabeth; Sunday's River, draining Sneeuwbergen, Brintjes Hoogte, the Zwarterruggens, and Zuurberg; Bushman River; Kowie River, draining Lower Albany; Great Fish River, with its branches—the Kaga, Koonap, and Kat Rivers, draining Cradock, Somerset, Albany, and Fort Beaufort divisions; Keiskamma (the colonial boundary to the east), Buffalo, draining British Kaffraria; Great Kei, and its branches—the Cacadu, White Kei, Indwe, and Tsomo, draining British Kaffraria, Queen's Town, and part of Kaffraria Proper or Kafirland;

\* A river system may be defined as the drainage of any large tract of the earth's surface, flowing in one direction from a common water-shed line.



the Bashee, Umtata, Umzimvobo, and Umzimculu, draining Kafirland, between British Kaffraria and Natal; the Umcomansi, Umgani, Utugela, and St Lucia, draining Natal and the Zulu country; the Manici and Imhampoor, draining the country north of Delagoa Bay; the Limpopo, draining the Transvaal Republic and country north and east of the same, and the east edge of the Kalihari; the Sofala, on the east coast; the Zambezi, draining the immense country north of the tropic, including the country north-east and west of Lake N'Gami, explored by Livingstone, Andersson, and F. Green. Of all these rivers, almost the only navigable ones are the Breede and the Zambezi; the rest are nearly useless for commercial purposes, if we except the Kowie and Buffalo, where harbor works are now in progress, and the Knysna, in the district of George, which is a safe harbor for small vessels, but must be looked upon as a large lagoon rather than a river. The largest of these rivers, although it is beyond, or rather bounds, the limits of South Africa, is the Zambezi. The next in magnitude, and possessing the greatest interest to us, is the Orange River, and its great branches—the Vaal, Caledon, and Hart Rivers.

15. The only collection of fresh water, in South Africa, which has any pretension to the name of a lake, is Lake N'Gami, many hundred miles north of the frontier of the Cape colony, discovered in 1846 by Dr. Livingstone and Mr. Oswell. There are many other extensive tracts of country covered with water after heavy rains, but in a few weeks rapidly dry up and become encrusted with a coat of salt. Among these, the principal is the Commissioner's Salt-pan, in Bushmanland, and De Beer's Vley, near the junction of the Brakke and Orange Rivers. There are many smaller salt-pans or lakes found in other parts of the Cape colony, as Bethelsdorp pan and Coega pan, in Uitenhage, and Amsterdam pan in Cradock; and there are some considerable vleys or collections of water in the division of Caledon, near the coast. Far to the north of the Zambezi basin, a great inland sea, called 'Nyassi, exists, but it has never been visited by Europeans.

*Questions.*—How many systems of rivers may be described in South Africa, and into what oceans do they discharge themselves? What countries are drained by the Orange River and its branches? What rivers drain the Bokkeveld and Great Karroos? What river drains Malmesbury division? What division does the Breede River drain? What river drains the Sneeuwbergen? What river drains the divisions of Cradock, Somerset, and Albany? What rivers drain British Kaffraria? What the Queen's Town division? What Kafirland? What Natal? What the Transvaal Republic? Which is the largest river

in South Africa? Which is the most important and interesting? What are the names of the navigable rivers? Are there any large lakes in South Africa? Who discovered lake N'Gami, and in what year? Are salt-pans numerous?

#### CHAPTER V.—MOUNTAINS AND HILLS.

16. The mountain ranges of South Africa may be generally considered as running parallel to the coast, forming a series of steps or plateaux, rising one above the other, which, from their highest levels, subside gradually down to the basins of the great rivers which drain the interior; the coast face being generally the steepest and best wooded. We may reckon three distinct and nearly parallel chains of mountains running through South Africa from north-west to north-east. Two of these chains lose themselves near the coast, the third continues to run north-east, as far as we know of the continent: (1) The great chain known by the names of the Kamiesberg, Roggeveld, Nieuweveld, Koudeveld, Sneeuwbergen, Stormbergen, Quathlamba, and Maluti mountains, of which the Laputa mountains of the Zambezi are probably a continuation. (2) Nearer the coast, a parallel chain of less height, bounding the plateau of the Great Karroo, forms the Cold Bokkeveld and Cedar mountains, the Wittebergen, Little and Great Zwartebergen, Groote River mountains, Great Winterhoek, and Zuurbergen, gradually subsiding towards the coast near the mouth of the Great Fish River. (3) Next the coast, at a distance varying from thirty to eight miles, run the Olifant's River mountains, the Drachenstein and Hottentot's Holland mountains, the Zonder Einde mountains, Langebergen, Outeniqua and Zitzikamma mountains, to Cape St. Frances, where the range subsides into the sea, at a still lower level than the first and second chains. At a high point of the first range (the Compassberg), in the Graaff-Reinet division, the mountains form a double loop, the southern arm of which, running from west to east, forms the Zwagershoek, Winterbergen, Amatola, and Matuana mountains, and so run parallel to the coast nearly to Natal, through Kafirland; the northern loop forms the Rhenosterbergen, Stormbergen, Quathlamba, &c., running as far to the north-east as we know of. Beside these ranges are many parallel and isolated subordinate mountain chains and peaks: the principal are the Piketberg, north of Berg River; Tiger and Koeberg, Paarl, and Riebeek's Kasteel, near Cape Town;

the Cape Peninsular mountains; the Paardeberg and Babylon's Tooren mountains, in Caledon division; the Kareebergen, north of the Nieuweveld; Kabiskow, on the border of Bushmanland; the Magalisberg, dividing the waters of the Orange River basin from those of the Limpopo, and various isolated groups of hills, many of which are of considerable height and fantastic forms,—as the Twee Tafelbergen, Theëbusberg, &c. (Cradock district). The highest point is probably the Mount of Sources, at the junction of the Maluti and Drakensberg mountains, north-west angle of Natal, about 10,000 feet. From this point, a lofty range of peaks, called the Maluti, diverge and run in a direction from north-east to south-west, between the Caledon and principal branch of the Orange River. The average height of the first range may be estimated at 7,000 feet; the second at 5,000 feet; and the coast range at 4,000 feet. The other highest summits are the Compassberg, near Graaff-Reinet, above 9,000 feet; Sneeuwkop, in the Cedar mountains, about 5,700 feet; the Great Winterberg, 7,800 feet; Table Mountain, near Cape Town, 3,582 feet; Winterhoek, above Tulbagh, 5,600 feet; Gaikaskop, near the Kat River Settlement, 6,800 feet; Great Winterhoek, near Uitenhage, 6,000 feet; and Hangklip, near Queen's Town, 6,800 feet. There are no active volcanoes, as far as is known, in South Africa. Pointed hills are locally called Spitzkops; flat-topped hills, like Table Mountain, Tafelbergs; Hangklips are peaks inclining to one side; and Toorenbergs are mountains like towers.—(*Vide* Geographical Nomenclature—Appendix.)

*Questions.*—What directions do the mountains in the Cape colony usually take? Which face is generally the steepest and best wooded? How many distinct ranges can generally be observed? What remarkable change takes place at the highest point of the first range? Do any subordinate ranges exist, and name some of them? What is the height of Table Mountain? What of the first range, generally? What mountains form the first range? Are there any active volcanoes in the Cape colony? What is a sugar-loaf or peaked hill generally called in South Africa? What a flat-topped hill?

#### CHAPTER VI.—DESERTS AND KARROOS.

17. In South Africa are immense tracts of country devoid of water, and, except at certain seasons, nearly uninhabited. Those within the colony are called karroos, from a Hottentot word, signifying dry. The principal deserts are: (1) The



Kalihari or Great Desert, north of the Orange River, extending north nearly one thousand miles, and about three hundred miles in width between Great Namaqualand and the country of the Betjouanas. It is, in many places, a well-wooded and bushy country, but nearly devoid of water, except after thunderstorms. Its inhabitants are only a few wandering poor Betjouanas and Bushmen, who know the position of the existing wells, and subsist by capturing the smaller game, which in some places abound. No large mountains or rivers are found in the desert, but many low parallel ranges of hills and dry water-courses intersect it. (2) Bushmanland, south of the Orange River, is a sterile and desert tract, forming the northern parts of the Beaufort and Clanwilliam divisions, at an average height of three thousand feet above the sea, inhabited by a few wandering hordes of Korannas and Bushmen, and some migrating boers and bastards from the Hantam and Nieuweveld districts. By the formation of dams in the dry water-courses, this desert might, probably, in a few years, become habitable. The springs and waters now found are generally brackish; fine grass, however, abounds in certain seasons of the year. (3) The Great Karroo, lying between the Roggeveld, Nieuweveld, and Sneeuwbergen, on the north; and the Cold Bokkeveld mountains, and Wittebergen and Zwartebergen, on the south, about three hundred and fifty miles long, and seventy wide, is a sterile, waterless tract of country, although producing rich grasses after the periodical rains. The main road from Cape Town to Beaufort (West) crosses this karroo. (4) Nearly the whole of the west coast of Namaqualand, from Walvisch Bay to the Buffel's River, for thirty or forty miles inland, may be esteemed a sandy and waterless desert, where a drop of rain seldom falls. Generally, in all these deserts, rains are very uncertain, and often for many years never fall. The rivers shown on the maps are, therefore, for long periods, merely dry watercourses, and whatever little water found, is generally brackish, and collected by digging in the bed of the river, the natural course of the drainage of the country. In the Kalihari, the abundance of a succulent wild watermelon often proves a succedaneum for the want of water.

*Questions.*—What is the nature of the Kalihari desert? Is it inhabited? Where is Bushmanland situated? How is it watered? Is it capable of improvement? What are the boundaries of the Great Karroo? What is the meaning of the word karroo? What is its extent? What is the nature of the west coast of Namaqualand? Are rains frequent in these deserts? Do the rivers shown on the map constantly flow? Of what nature is the water generally found?

## CHAPTER VII.—FORESTS, ARABLE LANDS, SHEEP-WALKS, ETC.

18. *Forests.*—Different in almost every character from the new world, South Africa presents but few extensive forests. Those that exist are generally found on the coast face of the mountain ranges, and increase in denseness as we travel eastwards. Considerable forests of a species of cedar are found in the Cedarberg, east of the town of Clanwilliam. From thence we find little wood till we reach the magnificent forests of the Outeniqua and Zitzikamma, in the George and Uitenhage divisions. Dense bush and large timber is found in the Addo Bush, Kat River mountains, Buffalo and Amatola mountains, along the coast of Kafirland and in Natal, generally increasing in size and value as we travel eastwards. In the Transvaal country are also large tracts of forests; and the Kalihari desert, although so dry, is described as in some parts densely wooded. Little timber, even for firewood, is found in the western and northern parts of the Cape colony and Orange Free State, and the inhabitants have often to have recourse to the dung of cattle for fuel. A few remains of the primeval forests or "bosch" are found in the Western Province, at Hout's Bay, behind Table Mountain, and in the ravines of the Zonder Einde and Langebergen.

19. *Arable Lands, Sheep-walks, &c.*—The arable lands of the Cape colony extend from the Olifant's River, south, along the coast, and to the eastward, in all the well-watered valleys of the mountain ranges, and generally wherever water is abundant. The best sheep-walks are found in the central and north-eastern districts. The vine is generally cultivated in the western divisions, where it is the principal staple. Cattle thrive best in the grassy plains of the Orange Free State and Betjouanaland. Along the course of the large rivers, dense belts of mimosas and willows are generally found.

*Questions.*—Are there many extensive forests in South Africa? Which face of the mountain ranges are they generally found on? Where are the Cedar Mountains situated? Where are the Outeniqua and Zitzekamma forests? Is the Traansval country well wooded? Is the Kalihari desert well wooded? Is fuel abundant in the western and northern parts of the colony? Where are the principal arable lands of the colony chiefly situated? Where are the best sheep walks? Where is the vine cultivated? Where is the best country for rearing cattle? What distinguishes the course of the large rivers of South Africa?

## CHAPTER VIII.—NATURAL CURIOSITIES—GEOLOGY.

20. *Natural Curiosities.*—The principal natural curiosities in South Africa are : the great falls of Aukrabies, on the Orange River, in the division of Calvinia ; the great Victoria falls, in the Zambezi, described by Dr. Livingstone ; the Congo caverns, in the George division, described by Lieut. Sheerwill ; the great salt-pans of Utwetwe, in Betjouanaland, and the Commissioner's salt-pan in the district of Calvinia ; and the falls of the Utugela and Umgani, in Natal. Hundreds of striking and curious mountain peaks, of every possible shape, are found universally scattered over the interior. The Great Karroo and Kalihari desert are worthy of a visit from every lover of nature in its most sterile and barren state, as even those dry and parched regions are not without a certain gloomy grandeur. Mineral springs, hot and cold, are found in several parts of the colony.

21. *Geology.*—Of late years much attention has been paid to the elucidation of the geology of South Africa, by A. G. Bain, Esq., Drs. Atherstone and Rubidge, A. Wiley, Esq., and others, and a geological map of the Cape colony has been constructed by the first named of these gentlemen. We can only here give the merest sketch of a subject which is still but imperfectly known. The most generally received theory is, that the interior of the continent was once a vast fresh water lake (as is proved by the fossil remains of dicynodons and other reptiles), fringed round by the mountains, of older formation, which form our coast mountain ranges. North of the Olifant's River, extends, as far north as is known, along the west coast, a vast field of granite and gneiss, in which occur the copper formations, which are now working with great success in Little Namaqualand. In Table Mountain and the Cape district generally, we find the old clay slate formation, upheaved by protrusions of granite, on which again are deposited nearly horizontal beds of sandstone, as on Table Mountain and the Lion's Head. Indeed, a young geological student can hardly do better than carefully study and learn to understand the phenomena laid bare by nature before his eye a few hundred yards distant only from the South African College, where the junctions of the igneous and aqueous rocks are well defined. The coast regions are generally composed of sandstones, equivalent, perhaps, to the Old Red Sandstone of Europe ; and from the Karroo north, Mr. Bain considers, to the tropics, are



found nothing but beds of sandstone and shales of lacustrine or fresh-water formation, intersected with dykes of igneous rocks and hills, nearly all topped with the same. The most interesting parts of the colony for geological studies are Table Mountain, Bain's Kloof, the Zuurberg mountain, in Uitenhage, Upper Albany, and the Wittebergen, in the Albert division.

*Questions.*—What part of the Cape colony are the Congo caverns situated in? Where are the large falls described by Dr. Livingstone? Who are the principal improvers of South African geology? Describe the geological features of Table Mountain? Where in South Africa do we principally find granite and gneiss?

#### CHAPTER IX.—MANKIND OF SOUTH AFRICA.

22. There are several distinct races of mankind inhabiting South Africa, divided into the great classes of white and colored. The white races are: (1) *a* The Dutch or Batavian descendants of the original founders, in A.D. 1652, of the Cape colony, and who constitute the greater part of the white population of it and the independent republics; *b* The English or Anglo-Saxon race, who have settled in the Cape colony and Natal since they became British colonies, in A.D. 1795, 1806, and 1843; *c* German or Teutonic, of whom a considerable number have lately arrived from Europe in the different German legions; *d* Descendants of French refugees who settled in the colony after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes, in A.D. 1684, and who have, in lapse of years, become almost amalgamated with their Dutch brethren, but whose family names still enable their descent to be distinguished; *e* A few half-caste Portuguese, on the east coast. (2) The Hottentot races or tribes with yellow or light olive skins, hair in little woolly tufts, and speaking various dialects of a language articulated with clicks, and distinct from any other known: *a* Hottentot proper, dispersed through the colony and nearly extinct in the pure line; *b* Korannas, living on both sides of the Orange River; *c* Namaquas, inhabiting Great and Little Namaqualand; *d* Bosjesmans or Bushmen, scattered over the north part of Cape colony and Kalihari desert, as far as explored; *e* Griquas, a bastard race of mixed blood, of Dutch fathers and Hottentot mothers, dwelling under independent chiefs, along the north bank of Orange River and south of Betjouanaland, and generally dispersed, under the name of Bastards, through the colony. (3) Races speaking the Kafir language and

its dialects : *a* Amakosa\* Kafirs, including the Gaika, Slambie, Gonubi, and other tribes, living in British Kaffraria ; *b* Amagaleka, living beyond Great Kei ; *c* Amatembu, in east part of Queen's Town division and beyond the Indwe, in Kafirland proper, commonly called Tambookies ; *d* Amaponda, between the Bashee and Umzimculu ; *e* Amabaxa, north and east of the latter ; *f* Broken tribes of Zulu and Amalunga origin, living in the colony of Natal and on its west borders ; *g* Amazulu, living east of Natal ; *h* Amazwasi, living near Delagoa Bay ; *i* Amalunga, north and east of Delagoa Bay ; *k* Amatabile, to the far north, on the southern slope of the basin of the Zambezi, under the chief Moselikatse ; *l* Amafengu, the remains of broken Zulu tribes, once living in a state of slavery among the Kafirs, now dwelling as British subjects in the Cape colony, and known by the appellation of Fingoes ; *m* Ghonaquas, a mixed race of Kafirs and Hottentots, now dispersed through the frontier tribes. (4) Tribes speaking the Sichuana language and its dialects, including the Basutus, inhabiting the north-west valleys of the Maluti mountains ; the Batclapis, Bamungwatas, Bakweins, Makololo, &c., living north and west of the Boer republics and the Vaal and Orange Rivers. The most powerful and influential of these tribes is the Basutus, under Moshesh. The Betjouana races extend north, as far as the Zambezi, where they gradually merge into the Negro. The Kalihari forms the western boundary of the country inhabited by these races. (5) Damara and Ovampo, speaking the Ovampo language, living north of Great Namaqualand. Their appearance and language is different from the other races, and probably they are of Negro descent. (6) Berg Damaras, a tribe of predatory Negroes, who now speak the Namaqua dialect, and who inhabit the most mountainous and inaccessible parts of Damaraland. Besides the above families of the human race, are found in South Africa, and principally in the western division, numerous descendants of Malay slaves, supposed to be of Javanese origin, professing the Mahomedan faith ; and also a mixed population, composed of liberated Negroes from the east coast, Malagasches, &c.

23. *Character and Physical Appearance of Native Tribes.*—The Hottentots are a light-hearted, lazy, and indolent race, but still capable of improvement ; excitable, and easily led to good or evil. They are of light, active make, generally below

\* The prefix Ama signifies people of tribe.



the middle size; of light olive complexion, and woolly hair in tufts. The Kafirs are more athletic and warlike, love a pastoral life, and prize cattle, not caring much for agricultural pursuits. They are generally a well-made, tall race, of a dark-brown color, clean-limbed and active. The Betjouanas are more industrious, build better huts, cultivate more ground, work in metal, and generally show more ingenuity than the Kafirs. In physical appearance they resemble the latter, although of inferior physical energy. The Ovampo are a mild, peaceable, and pastoral people, with whom, however, we are not as yet much acquainted. The Griqua, Koranna, and Namaqua, all partake more or less of the Hottentot character, which, we are sorry to say, on the northern outskirts of the race in Great Namaqualand, is fast degenerating into a species of brigandage. The Bushman may be represented as the very lowest type in the scale of civilization among the Hottentot races; and the Bakillihari, or poor Betjouana, is nearly the same among the latter nation. Of the white races it may be said that, unfavorable as the circumstances are in which many of them have been for many years placed, both as regards educational and social advantages, they have not, but with few exceptions, degenerated from the high scale of civilization which is the type of the Anglo-Saxon and Batavian races.

*Questions.*—What white races inhabit South Africa? What are the principal native tribes? What is the character of the Hottentot? What that of the Kafir and Betjouana? What tribes speak the Sichuana language?

#### CHAPTER X.—RELIGIONS.

24. The majority of the white races in South Africa belong to the Dutch Reformed Church; but there are considerable numbers of Church of England, Wesleyan, Independent, and other reformed churches, besides numerous Roman Catholic Christians. In Cape Town and Port Elizabeth, the numerous Malays are nearly all Mahommedans, and possess mosques. The bulk of the Kafir, Betjouana, and Damara tribes are heathen, although numerous mission stations are formed amongst them, which are slowly, but surely, spreading the light of the gospel. The Bastard Hottentot races are generally instructed in the truths of Christianity. The Dutch Reformed Church, maintaining a Presbyterian form of government, adopts the parochial division; and the old parishes, originally

contained, many of them, thousands of square miles ; but as the colony is becoming more thickly inhabited, they are now frequently subdivided, the founding of a new church generally giving rise to a new village and parish. The English Episcopal Church is ruled by three Bishops, namely, Cape Town, Graham's Town, and Natal; the Roman Catholics have bishops in Cape Town and Graham's Town. The diocese of Cape Town also includes the Island of St. Helena.

*Questions.*—What religions are found in South Africa? How is the Dutch Reformed Church ruled? How the Episcopal Church? How the Roman Catholic?

#### CHAPTER XI.—GOVERNMENT.

25. The Cape colony is governed by a representative of Queen Victoria; a Legislative Council (consisting of fifteen members, who are designated honorable, and presided over by the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court); and a House of Assembly (consisting of forty-six members). The members of both Houses are elected. No person holding an official situation under the Crown is allowed to be elected to either House, but four of the principal officers of Government have a seat, and can take part in the debates and discussions of either House; but they have no vote. The franchise or right of voting is on the most liberal scale, and perhaps no colony or country in the world can boast of a greater degree of constitutional freedom than is enjoyed by the Cape colony.

26. The Orange Free State is a republic, ruled by an elected President and Council, but its constitution, as well as that of its sister republic, the Transvaal, is of too recent a formation to admit of any opinion as to its stability or advantages.

27. Natal has nearly the same kind of government as the Cape colony, modified to meet the difference in the circumstances of the country.

28. The government of the native tribes is generally of a patriarchal character, under the rule of their chiefs, controlled by counselors, either hereditary or selected by the former. Among the Zulu tribes, at least, the power of the chief is often exercised in a most arbitrary and tyrannical manner.

*Questions* —What form of government does the Cape colony possess? What form do the Boer republics use? What is that of the colony of Natal? What that, generally, of the native tribes? What distinguishes the rule of the native chiefs?

## CHAPTER XII.—ZOOLOGY, OR ANIMAL LIFE.

29. South Africa has been always celebrated for the variety of wild animals found in it, and although the larger kinds are now seldom found in the Cape colony, yet, in the vast regions north of it, up to 16° of south latitude, the elephant, three kinds of the rhinoceros, the giraffe, hippopotamus or zeehoe, lion, leopard and panther, ostrich, all the large antelopes (some of the antelope tribe roam in countless numbers), and an immense variety of other animals, are still met with. A few elephants and buffaloes still exist in the Cape colony, in the Zitzikamma, Addo, and Kowie forests, in the divisions of George, Uitenhage, and Albany. The gemsbok is still found in Bushmanland, and immense flocks of gnus, quaggas, and springboks still frequent the plains of Cradock and Colesberg. Ostriches are yet found in the plains of Zwartland, within fifty miles of Cape Town. Snakes are everywhere numerous; and in the Limpopo River are numerous crocodiles. On the coast is abundance of fish, and whales constantly frequent our bays during the breeding season. South Africa, generally, is favorable for the rearing of cattle, sheep, and horses, although epidemic diseases often carry off large numbers of them; and in the northern regions, a poisonous fly, called tsetse, kills all oxen and horses it bites, and thus renders traveling very difficult in many parts of these regions. Wolves, baboons, jackals, wild dogs, &c., everywhere abound; and wild pigs in many localities. That fatal disease, hydrophobia, is unknown among the canine races of South Africa. Of birds, besides the ostrich, eagles of several varieties, vultures, paaus, pheasants, and partridges abound. Of insects, besides the tsetse, already mentioned, the locust is the most destructive. The camel, although abundant in North Africa, is not known here, although in many parts he seems well adapted for the locality as well as climate, especially for the sandy tracts along the coast in Little Namaqualand, the Piketberg, and Malmesbury divisions.

*Questions.*—Is animal life abundant in South Africa? What large animals do we find there? Do any still exist in the Cape colony? Are numerous snakes found there? Are crocodiles found, and where? Do cattle and horses thrive? Are epidemic diseases prevalent among cattle? What is the name of the poisonous fly which attacks them, and where is it found? Are whales found on the coast? What fatal dog disease is not known in South Africa? What is the most destructive insect? Is the camel used?

## CHAPTER XIII.—MERCANTILE PRODUCTIONS—COMMERCE.

30. The Cape colony produces and exports large quantities of wool, aloes, corn, wine, dried fruits, some medical herbs, timber for building and wagon purposes, horses, cattle, and sheep, hides, horns, goat and sheepskins, copper ore, tallow, argol. Tobacco and brandy are also produced in considerable quantities for home consumption. The Orange Free State produces wool, cattle, horses, sheep, skins of wild animals, tallow, &c. The Betjouana country, Damaraland, and Ovampoland, produce ivory, karosses, hides, skins of wild animals, sjamboks, and copper ore. Natal produces sugar, arrowroot, pine-apples, hides and skins, indigo and coffee in small quantities, ivory and natural curiosities. Hides, horns, and cattle are exported from Kaffraria.

31. The coasting trade of the Cape colony, in the countries north and east of it, is constantly increasing, and employs a considerable amount of tonnage, including three steamers.

32. The internal traffic is principally carried on in bullock wagons, but the use of horse and mule trains has greatly increased wherever good roads have been constructed, and the introduction of railways is now determined on, and will probably be shortly commenced. (For the value of exports from South Africa, see Appendix.) The principal shipping ports are Table Bay, Mossel Bay, Port Elizabeth, East London, and Port Natal. There is a naval establishment at Simon's Bay; and the trade of Port Beaufort is increasing. Considerable works are at present in execution at the mouth of the Kowie River, in the division of Bathurst, Lower Albany, with every prospect of success; also at East London, the port of British Kaffraria. The natural advantages of the Knysna harbor have not yet been turned to account.

*Questions.*—What are the principal exports of the Cape colony? From where do we get our supply of ivory? What does Natal produce? Is the country trade in a flourishing condition? How is the internal trade carried on?

## CHAPTER XIV.—CLIMATE, HEALTH OF INHABITANTS, ETC.

33. The climate of South Africa, south of the tropic of Capricorn, is generally healthy. The Cape colony, Orange Free State, and Natal, particularly so. The coast districts



enjoy, generally, moderate periodical rains; but the interior is very subject to intense drought, except in the vicinity of the high mountain ranges. Frost and snow is nearly unknown, except in the interior and on the high lands and mountain peaks. Thunderstorms in the northern and eastern parts are very violent and frequent. North of the Limpopo, the climate assumes more of a tropical character, and the coast north-east of Natal is very unhealthy. South of the Orange River, fever and other epidemics are nearly unknown, and the country is, perhaps, as healthy as any in the world. On the west coast the winter is generally the rainy season; in the eastern districts, it is the contrary. Very few marshes or any malaria occur along the coast of the Cape colony. Near Cape Town, thunderstorms are unfrequent, in comparison with the rest of the colony. In the remote regions north of Lake N'Gami, and in the Zambezi country, the climate, partaking of a tropical character, is, in the hot season, very unhealthy, and even in the Transvaal republic, fevers often cut off many of the white inhabitants.

*Questions.*—Is the climate of South Africa generally healthy? What parts of it are not so? Is frost or snow general? Are droughts prevalent? Which is the rainy season in the western districts? Which in the eastern? Are any marshes found in the Cape colony? Are thunder-storms frequent? Is fever prevalent in the Transvaal republic?

## PART II.

### DESCRIPTION OF DIVISIONS OF SOUTH AFRICA.

---

#### BRITISH COLONIES.

##### CHAPTER I.—CAPE COLONY.

34. The Cape colony was originally founded by the Dutch, under Van Riebeeck, about the year 1652; the Portuguese having before made an attempt at a settlement. It was at first but a very small patch of ground, between the Liesbeek River and Table Mountain, but when it was taken by the English, in 1796, it had extended east to the Great Fish River, and north along the great mountain range of the Roggeveld, to the Sneeuwberg and Bamboosberg. In 1803, at the peace of Amiens, it was given up by the English, who occupied it again in 1806. Since that time the boundary has been extended north to the Orange River, and east to the Keiskamma and Indwe, an area of about 300,000 square miles.

35. The boundaries of the Cape colony now (1858) are: The Orange River, on the north and north-east, which divides it from Great Namaqualand, Griqualand, and the Free State republic; on the east and north-east, the 'Tees, a small tributary of the Orange River, to its source, thence along the Stormbergen mountains, the Indwe and Keiskamma Rivers, to the sea, which divide it from the Basutu territory, Kafirland, and British Kaffraria; on the south, it is bounded by the Indian Ocean; on the west by the Atlantic.

36. The Cape colony is generally considered as forming two sections, the Western and Eastern Districts, and contains the following electoral divisions, which are again subdivided for fiscal and magisterial purposes:

## WESTERN DISTRICTS.

[Those marked *a* are seats of a resident magistrate or civil commissioner; and at those marked *b* a periodical court is held.]

Electoral Divisions.	Fiscal and Magisterial Divisions.	Chief Towns & Villages.
CLANWILLIAM .....	{ Clanwilliam..... Little Namaqualand..... Calvinia.....	{ <i>a</i> Clanwilliam. <i>a</i> Springbokfontein. <i>a</i> Calvinia.
MALMESBURY .....	{ Malmesbury..... Piketberg .....	{ <i>a</i> Malmesbury. <i>a</i> Piketberg. <i>b</i> Hopefield. <i>b</i> Darling.
CAPE .....	{ Cape..... Wynberg..... Simon's Town.....	{ <i>a</i> Cape Town. <i>b</i> D'Urban. <i>b</i> Mowbray. <i>b</i> Rondebosch. <i>a</i> Wynberg. <i>a</i> Simon's Town.
PAARL .....	Paarl.....	{ <i>a</i> Paarl. <i>b</i> Wellington.
STELLENBOSCH .....	Stellenbosch.....	{ <i>a</i> Stellenbosch. <i>b</i> Somerset (West). <i>b</i> Franschhoek.
WORCESTER.....	{ Worcester..... Tulbagh.....	{ <i>a</i> Worcester <i>a</i> Tulbagh. <i>b</i> Ceres.
CALEDON .....	{ Caledon .....	{ <i>a</i> Caledon. <i>a</i> Bredasdorp. <i>b</i> Napiersdorp. <i>b</i> Elim. <i>b</i> Villiersdorp. <i>b</i> Genadendal.
SWELLENDAM .....	{ Swellendam..... Robertson .....	{ <i>a</i> Swellendam. <i>b</i> Heidelberg. <i>a</i> Robertson. <i>a</i> Riversdale. <i>b</i> Ladysmith. <i>b</i> Montagu.
GEORGE.....	{ George..... Oudtshoorn..... Aliwal (South)..... Knysna.....	{ <i>a</i> George. <i>a</i> Oudtshoorn. <i>a</i> Aliwal (South) <i>a</i> Melville. <i>b</i> Belvidere.
BEAUFORT (WEST).....	{ Beaufort..... Fraserburg..... Prince Albert .....	{ <i>a</i> Beaufort. <i>a</i> Frazerburg. <i>a</i> Prince Albert. <i>a</i> Victoria.

## EASTERN DISTRICTS.

Electoral Divisions.	Fiscal and Magisterial Divisions.	Chief Towns & Villages.
COLESBERG.....	{ Colesberg..... Hope Town..... Middelburg.....	{ a Colesberg. b Hanover. a Hope Town. a Middelburg.
GRAAFF-REINET.....	{ Graaff-Reinet..... Murraysburg..... Richmond.....	{ a Graaff-Reinet. a Murraysburg. b Aberdeen. a Richmond.
UITENHAGE.....	{ Uitenhage..... Alexandria..... Humansdorp.....	{ a Uitenhage. Darlington. a Alexandria. Colchester. b Jansenville. a Humansdorp.
PORT ELIZABETH.....	Port Elizabeth.....	{ a Port Elizabeth. Walmer.
ALBERT.....	{ Albert..... Aliwal (North).....	{ a Burghersdorp. a Aliwal (North) Dordrecht.
CRADOCK.....	Cradock .....	a Cradock.
SOMERSET (EAST).....	{ Somerset..... Bedford .....	a Somerset. a Bedford.
FORT BEAUFORT.....	{ Fort Beaufort..... Stockenstrom, or Kat River .....	{ a Fort Beaufort. a Eland's Post, or Seymour. b Philipton.
ALBANY.....	{ Albany..... Bathurst.....	{ a Graham's Town. a Bathurst. b Port Frances. Salem. Riebeek.
VICTORIA .....	{ Victoria (South)..... Peddie..... Victoria (North), or Queen's Town.....	{ a Alice. a Peddie. Wooldridge. a Queen's Town. b Whittlesea.

(The Western Districts return eight members to the Legislative Council and the Eastern seven members. Each of the electoral divisions returns two members to the House of Assembly; the city of Cape Town four members; and the city of Graham's Town two members.)



37. The population of the Cape colony, by the latest returns (1856), numbered 267,096 souls, comprised as follows :

White (Dutch, English, and German).....	119,577
Malays.....	6,099
Negroes.....	1,669
Colored.....	129,167
Aliens.....	10,584
Total.....	<u>267,096</u>

Of whom 173,753 were rural, and 93,343 urban. Since the census has been taken, there has been a large immigration of German settlers, as well as an influx of several thousand Kafirs from British Kaffraria, whom the pressure of famine has forced to come into the colony for employment, and a large emigration from Europe has just set in (1858), and the total population can now not be estimated less than 300,000 souls.

38. The general character of the Cape colony is mountainous; the chains running nearly parallel to the coast and to each other. Large elevated flats and plateaux, however, occur on the north and east, and many tracts near the coast have an undulating character. Single detached mountains are found everywhere dotting the extensive plains of the interior.

39. The climate of the Cape, as has been shown, is temperate and healthy, and very favorable for European habits and constitutions.

40. The only available or known mineral wealth are the large deposits of copper, lately worked, in Namaqualand, from which, in the year ending 30th June, 1858, 3,897 tons of copper ore were obtained, valued at £114,657.

41. No manufactories of any importance, except flour, exist, the country being chiefly a pastoral and agricultural one. Of the great staple articles of wool and wine, exported from the Cape colony in the year ending 30th June, 1858, the quantity of the former was 16,757,786 lbs., valued at £1,081,611; and of the latter 876,282 gallons, valued at £157,989.

## CHAPTER II.—DESCRIPTION OF THE DIVISIONS OF CAPE COLONY.

### WESTERN DISTRICTS.

42. Clanwilliam (*electoral division*): Clanwilliam, Little Namaqualand, and Calvinia (*fiscal divisions*).—Clanwilliam, in 1857, owing to its immense extent, was separated into three

divisions, for fiscal and magisterial purposes: Clanwilliam south, Little Namaqualand north, and Calvinia north-east. It comprises an area of not less than 60,000 square miles, the greater part of which is a rugged, barren desert. It is drained by the Olifant's River, and its branches—the Doorn, Holle, &c., by the Buffel's and Groen Rivers, &c., and the Great Orange River, forming its northern boundary, none of which are navigable; and, except the Orange and Olifant's, seldom flow, being merely dry channels. The chief town is Clanwilliam, on the Jan Dissel's River, a feeder of the Olifant's River, near the western foot of the Cedar mountains.

43. Calvinia is a small village in the Hantam, a high and rather fertile country, separating the Great Karroo from Bushmanland; and the division of that name extends north to the Orange River, comprising an immense extent of barren country.

44. Springbokfontein, the property of a private mercantile firm, is the chief place in the mining districts, division of Little Namaqualand. That part of Clanwilliam north of the Olifant's River, to the south slope of the Kamiesberg, is called Hardeveld, on account of the barren and rocky nature of the soil. The most fertile part of the whole division is the valley of the Olifant's River, which is bounded on each side by a lofty chain of mountains, in the narrow valleys between which large alluvial tracts, very fertile, are found, especially when flooded by the rain. Celebrated medicinal hot springs are found near the foot of Pikenier's Kloof in this valley.

45. On the Kamiesbergen (5,300 feet), in this division, is a Wesleyan mission station (Lilyfontein); and on the Olifant's River, at Ebenezer, and behind the Cedar mountains, at Wupperthal, are stations of the Rhenish missionaries. At Kommagaas, Kokfontein, and Richterfeld, in Little Namaqualand, are also stations of the latter society.

46. The Orange River forms the whole northern boundary of the division, and the ocean the west. On the east and south it is bounded by the divisions of Beaufort, Tulbagh, and Malmesbury. The Kamiesbergen, Cedar and Bokkeveldbergen, Kardouw, Hantam, and Koperbergen, are the principal mountains; but the whole surface, except the high plains of Bushmanland, is very rugged, especially in the neighborhood of the Orange River.

47. In Little Namaqualand and Calvinia are still found a few of the original Hottentot races, recognizing a native chief or leader, and wandering with their flocks along the banks of

the Orange River. The population of the division is about 3000 white and 5250 colored. The products of the division are copper ore from Little Namaqualand, corn from the Zandveld, south of Olifant's River, and cattle and horses, with a few ostrich feathers, from the Hantam. The shipping places are Port Nolloth, Hondeklip, Donkin's, and Lambert's Bays,—anchorage all exposed to north-west gales.

48. Malmesbury (*electoral division*): Malmesbury and Piketberg (*fiscal divisions*).—Malmesbury and Piketberg divisions lie south of Clanwilliam, and north of the Cape division; Malmesbury being south of the Berg River, and Piketberg north of it, having together an area of about 8000 square miles. They are fertile in corn and wine. The only river is the Berg, and its branches—the Twenty-four and Zout Rivers. In this division are Saldanha and St. Helena Bays. The town of Malmesbury is about 45 miles north of Cape Town, and has several good houses and a large church. The other villages are Piketberg, on the east side of the mountain of the same name; Hopefield, on the head of the Zout River, about 20 miles east of Saldanha Bay; Darling, a few miles north of the Moravian mission station of Mamre, in the Groenekloof, and Goedverwacht, a missionary village on the south point of the Piketberg.

49. The products of Malmesbury and Piketberg are corn, horses, mules, dried fish, fruit, and wine. Excellent medicinal hot springs are found in the town of Malmesbury, and a new church and village have been recently projected at Riebeek's Kasteel, a few miles east of it.

50. The principal mountains of this division are Piketberg, north of the Berg River; Patrysberg, north of Saldanha Bay; Riebeek's Kasteel, an isolated hill west of Berg River; and Honingberg, on the east bank of the same. Near the coast is an extensive sandy plain. A new line of road through Pikenier's Kloof, a pass in the mountain range west of the Olifant's River Valley, leading from Malmesbury to the town of Clanwilliam, has been completed during the present year (1858). Malmesbury contains a population of 5,837 white and 6,119 colored inhabitants. The Moravian mission station at Groenekloof is one of the most flourishing institutions in the Cape colony.

51. Cape (*electoral division*): Cape, Simon's Town, and Wynberg (*fiscal divisions*):—The Cape division lies south of Malmesbury, and includes the Tiger and Koebergen, the sandy flats between them and False Bay, and the Cape peninsula, an



area of about 700 square miles. On the hills and in the rich valleys of the Koebergen, are many valuable corn-producing farms; and the wines of Constantia have a world-wide renown. The capital of the colony stands on the shores of Table Bay, in this division (see principal towns). Simon's Town is a naval station, and contains an extensive naval yard, barracks, &c. Wynberg, Rondebosch, and Mowbray are all populous villages, on the road between Cape Town and Simon's Town. D'Urban is a village on the east flank of the Tigerberg. Kalk Bay, once a mere fishing station, has become a much-frequented bathing place. The products of the Cape division are wine, corn, fruit, vegetables, and considerable quantities of fish. The population of this division, exclusive of Cape Town, amounts to 6,249 white and 7,464 colored inhabitants. A railway is projected from Cape Town to Stellenbosch and Wellington.

52. Paarl and Stellenbosch (*electoral divisions*).—These divisions lie between the Cape division and the first mountain range, and as their extent is small, and physical features and products similar, they may be described together. The former is watered by the Berg, the latter by the Eerste River; and the Simonsberg, an offshoot of the Hottentot's Holland mountains, forms the boundary between them. Both are similar in their productions, being the greatest wine districts in the colony. Fruits of every kind are grown in abundance; corn, vegetables, &c. These divisions, forming the old Stellenbosch district, were first settled by French refugees, who arrived in this country after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes, in 1684. The towns in the Paarl division are the Paarl, at the foot of the mountain of that name, the seat of the civil commissioner, and Wellington, a thriving village about seven miles north-east of it, at the foot of Bain's Kloof, through which an excellent road leads over the Berg River mountains into the interior.

53. In the Stellenbosch division are, Stellenbosch (the chief town of the division) a romantic and beautiful town, about 24 miles east of Cape Town; and Somerset (West), a thriving village on the main road from Cape Town to Graham's Town, *via* Sir Lowry's Pass, a favorite resort of invalids, owing to its proximity to the sea, near the head of False Bay. The area of the division of the Paarl may be computed at about 900 square miles, and that of Stellenbosch about 600. They are the smallest but most densely populated rural divisions of the Cape colony,—the Paarl containing 4,782 white and

6,867 colored inhabitants, and Stellenbosch, 2,349 white and 4,820 colored inhabitants.

54. The romantic valleys of Drakenstein, Jehosaphatsdal, and Wagonmakers' Valley, in the former, and the country called Hottentots' Holland, in the latter, are situated in these districts; also the valley and mountain pass of Franschehoek, through which a road leads into the valley of the Breede River, across the Franschehoek mountains, a lofty range, which, under the names of Hottentots' Holland and Drakenstein mountains, extends from Cape Hanglip north till it joins the Olifant's River range.

55. Worcester (*electoral division*): Worcester and Tulbagh (*fiscal divisions*).—The divisions of Worcester and Tulbagh form an electoral division, and include a very large tract of country, a great proportion of which is either barren mountain or is included in the Great Karroo. These divisions lie behind the coast range of mountains which divide them from the Paarl and Malmesbury divisions, and include zones or belts of country rising in regular steps between the first and third mountain ranges, and so possess a great variety of climate. The Breede and Little Berg River valleys, in which the towns of Worcester and Tulbagh are situated, formerly called Rodesand, are much higher than that of the Berg River, and produces corn, fruit, and wine, in abundance. Higher still lies the Warm Bokkeveld, a basin surrounded by high hills; and above that the Alpine regions of the Cold Bokkeveld, from which we descend into the Great Karroo. Crossing the Karroo, we ascend to the Little Roggeveld, also a high region, and to the Middle Roggeveld, higher still, from whence the country begins to slope towards the Orange River. Nearly three fourths of the divisions of Worcester and Tulbagh consist of barren Karroo country; but the Breede River valley, including the Goudine and Bosjesveld, Tulbagh basin, Warm and Cold Bokkeveld, and Hex River valley, are as fertile as any part of the colony.

56. Worcester and Tulbagh produce much corn, dried fruits, and wine. The European fruits, such as cherries, currants, &c., come to great perfection in the Cold Bokkeveld; cattle and horses thrive well in the Middle Roggeveld. The Dwyka River separates Worcester from the division of Beaufort, and the Little Zwarteberg divides it from that of Swellendam and Riversdale; and on the north, the Cold Bokkeveld mountains, and a line across the Great Karroo, separates Tulbagh from Clanwilliam and Calvinia. The Goudine, near Worcester,

produces excellent rasins, and has some celebrated hot baths. The high road from Cape Town to the Free State, *via* Karroo Poort, traverses these divisions, passing the Bain's Kloof and Mitchell's Pass, excellent mountain roads, made by the colonial government, and through Ceres, a rising village at the entrance of the Warm Bokkeveld.

57. The town of Worcester contains about 2,000 inhabitants, and is situated on the right bank of the Hex River, near its junction with the Breede. Tulbagh stands in a romantic mountain basin, near the sources of the Little Berg River, at the foot of the Witsemberg, about twelve miles north of the entrance to Mitchell's Pass. There are mission stations of the Rhenish Society at Saron and Steinthal, in the Tulbagh division. The village of Ceres is situated at the entrance of the Warm Bokkeveld, on the main road to the interior, and contains about 400 inhabitants. The area of the Worcester division is about 20,000 square miles; that of Tulbagh about 7,500. Tulbagh forms the northern part of the electoral division, and Worcester the southern. The former has a population of 2,072 white and 3,371 colored inhabitants, the latter 3,007 white and 3,536 colored. The highest mountain in this division is the Winterhoek, which separates the Olifant's River valley from Tulbagh basin, and forms a striking feature in the mountain panorama visible from Cape Town.

58. Caledon (*electoral division*): Caledon and Bredasdorp (*fiscal divisions*).—Caledon and Bredasdorp are situated behind the first mountain range, and comprehend the country between the ridge of the Zonder Eide mountains on the north and the South Indian Ocean on the south. On the east, an imaginary line divides these divisions from that of Swellendam. The country is generally undulating, with ranges of mountains parallel to the coast running through it. Near the coast are several large vlees or collections of water. The ZonderEide, running from west to east along the foot of the mountains of the same name, is the principal river. The production of wool is the chief staple of this division; the horses and mules are also very good. A large Moravian mission station, called Genadendal, the first founded in South Africa, is situated in a valley north of the Zonder Eide River, in this division; and Elim is another station of the same society, near the coast, in Bredasdorp division. The principal town, Caledon, lies at the foot of the Zwarteberg, celebrated for its hot baths. The other villages are Villiersdorp and



Napiersdorp. The probable area of Caledon division is 5,000 square miles, and contains a population of 3,250 white and 7,400 colored inhabitants.

59. The most southern point of South Africa, Cape L'Agulhas, is situated in the division of Bredasdorp, in latitude  $34^{\circ} 49'$  south, longitude  $20^{\circ} 0' 40''$  east, on which is erected a lighthouse, visible at the distance of six leagues. Danger Point and Gunner's Quoin are well-known landmarks on this part of the coast, and Babylon's Tooren is a lofty and remarkable mountain.

60. Swellendam (*electoral division*) : Swellendam, Riversdale, and Robertson (*fiscal divisions*).—This electoral division includes also the divisions lately formed of Riversdale and Robertson, and comprises the whole of the country between the Breede and Gauritz Rivers, as well as a large tract on the right bank of the former river, bounded by the division of Caledon. It is traversed from west to east by two chains of mountains,—the southern called the Langeberg, and the northern (which separates it from Worcester and the Karroo), the Little Zwarteberg and Anysberg. The Gauritz River separates Riversdale division from that of George, and the Duivenhok River separates the former from Swellendam. Swellendam may be physically divided into the coast region, an undulating grassy country between the mountains and the sea, called the Ruggens, and Kannaland, a dry karroo tract between the two mountain ranges of the Lange and Zwarteberg. The towns in the Swellendam division are Swellendam, founded in 1745, about four miles east of the Breede River; Robertson, a village and church near the Breede River, now the seat of a magistracy, about half-way to Worcester, in a rich and fertile district; Malagas, on the Breede River; and Montagu, a new and thriving village at the head of a pass leading from the first range of mountains into the country above it. Zuurbraak is a large missionary station, a few miles from Swellendam. In Riversdale division we have Riversdale, on the Vet River, the seat of a magistracy; Heidelberg, a recently-formed village; and Ladismith, at the foot of the Little Zwarteberg, in a remote part of Kannaland, near the Gauritz River; also a missionary station, called Zoar, in its neighborhood. Swellendam, Riversdale, and Robertson grow large quantities of wool, and produce an excellent breed of horses. Produce, to a considerable extent, is shipped from the mouth of the Breede River, at Port Beaufort, where there is a custom-house, and an increasing import trade is carried on at the same place.

The area of this electoral division is about 9,500 square miles, and its population 9,500 white and 8,200 colored. A difficult pass, called Seven Weeks' Poort (near Ladismith), forms the only communication between the Great Karroo and this division. Platte Kloof and Cogman's Kloof are mountain passes in the Langeberg, which could be improved by a small outlay. The Tradouw Kloof, near the Zuurbraak, may be also mentioned.

61. George (*electoral division*): George, Aliwal (South), Knysna, and Oudtshoorn (*fiscal divisions*).—The electoral division of George, formed in 1811, has, in 1858, been subdivided into the divisions of Oudtshoorn, Aliwal (South), George, and Knysna.

62. George is bounded on the west by the Gauritz River, separating it from Riversdale; on the north by the Great Zwarteberg, separating it from Beaufort; on the south by the ocean; and on the east by a line from Antonie's Kop to Pic Formosa, on the east side of Plettenberg Bay, separating it from Uitenhage. George division may be described as a series of narrow valleys, lying between the coast and the Great Zwarteberg range, the mountain ranges dividing them running nearly in straight lines from west to east, and the ranges and valleys formed like steps, from the coast upwards to the foot of the Great Zwartebergen. The tract of country between the sea and first chain of mountains is, generally, densely wooded near the foot of the mountains. Behind the first range is the long and narrow valley of Langekloof, through which runs the high road from Cape Town to the frontier. North of this, the Kammanassie mountains divide the Langekloof from the valley of the Olifant's River.

63. The principal rivers of the division are the Gauritz and its tributary, the Olifant's River, which water a very fertile country. Many torrents of inconsiderable size and short course intersect the coast line, rendering traveling along it difficult.

64. Owing to the general run of the mountains in the George division, the roads leading from west to east are generally good and easy of access; those from north to south, having to cross many ranges of high mountains, are very difficult and steep, unless where artificial passes have been formed, as at Meiring's Poort, in the Zwarteberg, and Cradock Kloof, now Montagu Pass, in the Outeniqua Mountains.

65. George possesses two or three zones or belts of climate. Next the coast are grassy tracts, affording fine pastures and



agricultural farms, and also dense woods, producing valuable timber. In Langekloof the farms are generally agricultural, and along the Olifant's River is, perhaps, as rich a tract of country as any in South Africa, producing wine, brandy, dried fruits, &c., in abundance, and from which the principal supply of the frontier, in these articles, is drawn.

66. The towns and villages in the George division are, George, the seat of the civil commissioner, situated near the foot of the Outeniqua mountains, about six miles distant from the coast; Blanco, a village four or five miles north-west of it, at the foot of Montagu Pass; Aliwal (South), the port of the division in Mossel Bay; Belvidere, Melville, and Newhaven, villages on the Knysna Lake. Oudtshoorn, a new village near the Olifant's River. There are mission stations of the London Society, for the benefit of the colored races, at Pacaltsdorp near the town of George, Dyzellsdorp near the Olifant's River, and Avontuur, in Langekloof.

67. George is traversed from west to east by the main road from Cape Town to the frontier, which passes over Montagu Pass. It produces corn, wine, brandy, horses, timber, and aloes. It is situated in a very central position, and when some newly-projected roads across the mountain chains are opened up, it is probable that a large increase to its exports will take place.

68. Some very curious natural caves, called the Cango caverns, well worthy of a visit, are found in this division, a few miles north of the village of Oudtshoorn. A few elephants are still found in the forests of the Zitzikamma. Mossel and Plettenberg Bays, and the Knysna, are the only really available ports on the coast. George division contains, in all, 10,350 white and 8,800 colored inhabitants, and includes an area of about 7,000 square miles.

69. Beaufort (*electoral division*): Beaufort, Victoria (West), Prince Albert, and Fraserburg (*fiscal divisions*).—The Beaufort electoral division is subdivided into the divisions of Beaufort (West), Prince Albert, Victoria (West), and Fraserburg. It includes an immense tract of country, containing upwards of 60,000 square miles, bounded on the north, by the Orange River; on the south, by the Zwarteberg, separating it from George; on the west, by the Hartebeest and Dwyka Rivers, separating it from Clanwilliam and Worcester; and on the east, by the divisions of Colesberg, Richmond, and Graaff-Reinet.

70. Beaufort division presents several distinct zones or belts of country from south to north. Along the foot of

Zwarteberg, forming the division of Prince Albert, is a fertile and well-watered region. North of it is a broad belt of barren karroo, stretching away to the foot of the Nieuweveld mountains, called the Gouph. Then extends a broad belt of mountains, well fitted for agricultural purposes, at the foot of which is the town of Beaufort. From the top of these mountains, the Nieuweveld extends away north to the Karreebergen, a long chain of flat-topped mountains, which traverses the country from west to east, about sixty miles north of the Nieuweveld. The western part of this region now forms the division of Fraserburg, the north-east that of Victoria (West). North of these mountains lies a barren desert tract, badly watered, and reaching to the Orange River, inhabited by a few wandering Bastards and Bushmen. The division of Beaufort comprehends a tract of country nearly as large as the European kingdoms of Portugal, Denmark, Belgium, and Saxony, together.

71. The rivers are mostly periodical, and the principal are the Gamka and its branches, forming, after they penetrate the Zwarteberg range, the Gauritz, and running into the South Indian Ocean, draining the Great Karroo, and the Zak River, and some other periodical streams, north of the Nieuweveld, which form the Hartebeest River, a tributary of the Orange River, the crest of the Nieuweveld forming the water-shed between the two systems of rivers.

72. The towns and villages of the Beaufort division are Beaufort, Victoria (West), Prince Albert, and Fraserburg, a new village and Dutch church in the Nieuweveld, near the boundary of Worcester district. It contains 5,173 white and 4,430 colored inhabitants.

73. The principal produce of Beaufort is wool and a few ostrich feathers. The country, although generally barren, is well adapted for sheep farms and breeding of cattle. Two mission stations, called Amandelboom and Schietfontein, are established by the Rhenish society, north of the Nieuweveld mountains, on a branch of the Zak River, for the use of the Bastard races found dispersed over the desert region in the northern parts of this division.

#### EASTERN DISTRICTS.

74. Colesberg (*electoral division*): Colesberg, Middelburg, and Hope Town (*fiscal divisions*).—This division, founded in 1825, now includes the divisions of Colesberg, Middelburg,

and Hope Town, is bounded on the north by the Orange River, through its whole extent; on the west, by the Orange River and division of Beaufort; on the south, by Richmond and Graaff-Reinet; on the east, by Cradock and Albert. It comprehends a vast extent of dry, barren, and apparently sterile plains, sloping down towards the Orange River, and dotted over with isolated hills. Since the formation of dams, the growth of wool has much increased, and farms have become very valuable. The rivers all run into the Orange, and comprehend the Zeekoe, Ongars, Brakke, and Oorlog's Poort, besides other minor watercourses. The towns are Colesberg, about 12 miles south of the Orange River, on the main road from Cape Town to the Free State; Hope Town, a village about 120 miles north-west of it, near the Orange River; Hanover, a new village, between Richmond and Colesberg; and Middelburg, a flourishing town, nearly midway between Graaff-Reinet, Colesberg, and Cradock, in the center of a rather fertile and well-watered district. Wool is the product of Colesberg, which generally resembles the divisions of Richmond and Cradock. That rare antelope, the gemsbok, is still found in parts of Colesberg. The area of the division is about 20,000 square miles, with a population of 5,466 white and 6,000 colored souls.

75. Graaff-Reinet (*electoral division*): Graaff-Reinet, Richmond, and Murraysburg (*fiscal divisions*).—Graaff-Reinet lies north of the Uitenhage district. It includes a high mountain region, called the Sneeuwbergen; and the Karroo plains, called Camdebo and Zwarterruggens, at the foot of it, as well as a large tract of highlands north of the mountains forming the divisions of Richmond and Murraysburg, and the country known by the name of the Midden and Winterveld. The highest mountain in the colony, the Compassberg, above 9,000 feet, is found in this division. Graaff-Reinet is celebrated for the excellency of its sheep-farms, and is chiefly a pastoral region. The town, which, next to Graham's Town, is the largest inland one in the Cape colony, is situated on the banks of the Sunday's River, and the streets are agreeably planted with orange and other trees. The other villages in the division are Aberdeen, at the foot of the mountains in the Camdebo; Murraysburg, in the Koudeveld, a high mountain region in the Sneeuwberg; and Richmond, in the Winterveld, near the source of the Brakke River, the chief town of the division of that name. The principal river is the Sunday's, and its branches. Wool is the chief article of export, and the



farms are considered the most valuable in the colony. The winters in the Sneeuwberg are very severe, and thunderstorms are frequent in summer. Graaff-Reinet has an area of about 18,000 square miles, and contains 5,627 white and 6,600 colored inhabitants.

76. Uitenhage (*electoral division*): Uitenhage, Alexandria, and Humansdorp (*fiscal divisions*).—The division of Uitenhage, formed in 1804, was a very extensive one, and is now subdivided into the divisions of Uitenhage, Alexandria, and Humansdorp, besides the electoral division of Port Elizabeth. Near the coast, it is traversed by several parallel ranges of very high and steep mountains—the Great Winterhoek, Kouga, Baviaan's Kloof, and Eland's River mountains; and the Zuurberg mountains separate it from the division of Somerset. North of these mountains are large dry and barren plains, intersected by belts of hills, called the Little Winterhoek, Zwarterruggens, &c. The Groote or Gamtoos River and its branches—the Baviaan's Kloof, Kouga, and other large periodical streams—drain the greater part of the west of the division; but many other rivers, the Zwartkop's, Coega, &c., have short courses from the mountains to the sea. The Sunday's River crosses it from north to south, and separates Alexandria division from that of Uitenhage. The eastern boundary is formed by the Bushman River.

77. The towns and villages are, Uitenhage, on the Zwartkop's, a town enjoying a very beautiful and fertile site, about twenty miles from Port Elizabeth, which is the port of the Eastern Province, a place of great trade, situated in the north-west angle of Algoa Bay, and containing nearly 5,000 inhabitants (*vide* Chief Towns); Humansdorp, near St. Frances' Bay, and Alexandria, in Olifant's Hoek, the seats of a civil commissioner; Jansenville; Darlington, an embryo village on the Sunday's River; and Colchester, another, situated near the mouth of same. Enon, Hankey, Clarkson, Bethelsdorp, and Kruisfontein are mission stations; the first of the Moravian, and the others of the London Missionary Society.

78. That part of Uitenhage east of the Sunday's River, along the Zuurberg, is covered with a dense bush, called the Addo, in which a few elephants and buffaloes are still found. Nearly the whole of the trade of the Eastern Province, the Free State, and Betjounaland, passes through this division to Port Elizabeth. A new line of road across the Zuurberg has been lately opened. Uitenhage has a probable area of

16,000 square miles, and contains 6,700 white and 7,500 colored inhabitants. Considerable mineral indications of lead and copper have been found at the Maitland mines, a few miles west of Port Elizabeth, and have been worked, but as yet without any successful results.

79. Port Elizabeth (*electoral division*).—The electoral division of Port Elizabeth comprehends a small tract of country formerly included in the Uitenhage division, in the neighborhood of the town of the same name. The appearance of the surface is rather bare and uninviting, consisting of sterile undulating plains, or sandy downs. There are two villages lately formed in this division, namely, Walmer, about six miles west, and Korsten, about four miles east of Port Elizabeth. The population of this division, including the town of Port Elizabeth, is 3,625 white and 1,489 colored inhabitants.

80. Albert (*electoral division*): Albert and Aliwal (North) (*fiscal divisions*).—The division of Albert, including that of Aliwal (North), forms the northern slope of the Stormberg mountains, and is bounded on the east by the colonial boundary, the Tees River, an inconsiderable stream, to its sources in the Quathlamba mountains; on the west, by the Oorlog's Poort River; on the north, by the Orange River; and on the south, by the range of the Zuurberg, Bamboes, and Stormbergen. Albert is drained by many rivers of short and rapid course, locally called spruits, which rise in the mountains and fall into the Orange River. The Kraai River and Stormberg Spruit are the principal of these. The country lies high, has a cold climate in winter, and is subject to violent thunderstorms. It is eligible for breeding sheep, cattle, and horses. On the east, is a high range of mountains, called the Wittebergen, which runs nearly at right angles to the Stormbergen, down to the Orange River. The principal towns are Burghersdorp, on the Stormberg Spruit, the chief town of Albert; and Aliwal (North), on the Orange River, the principal place in the Aliwal division. There has been a new village, called Dordrecht, near the Stormbergen, lately founded. The high road from East London to the Free State crosses Albert from south to north. There is a large native settlement and mission station at the Wittebergen, in this division. Albert has an area of about 8,000 square miles, and a population of 5,392 white and 9,379 colored inhabitants.

81. Cradock (*electoral division*).—The division of Cradock forms a large elevated basin, surrounded by mountains, in which

rise the different periodical streams that form the Great Fish River. The Sneeuwbergen, on the east, divides it from Graaff-Reinet; the Rhenosterberg, from Middelburg and Colesberg; the Zuurbergen, on the north, from Albert; and the Zwagershoek mountain and Great Winterberg, on the south, from Somerset and Bedford. On the east, the water-shed line dividing the waters of the Great Fish and Kei Rivers separates it from the division of Queen's Town. The physical appearance of Cradock division presents large flats covered with isolated hills, and it is generally a pastoral country. Occasionally, large herds of game—springboks, gnus, &c.—cover these plains. The rivers seldom run, except after heavy rains, and thunderstorms are frequent. The only town in the division is Cradock, situated on the left bank of the Great Fish River. Cradock division lies at an elevation of about 3,000 feet above the level of the sea, and is well adapted for sheep-farming. The mountains surrounding it, in winter, are generally covered with snow. The rivers are the Great and Little Brakke, the Vlekte Poort, Tarka, and other streams, which form the heads of the Great Fish River. The Tweetafel and Theebusbergen are remarkable isolated mountains. Several salt-pans are found in this division.

82. Somerset (*electoral division*): Somerset and Bedford (*fiscal divisions*).—Somerset lies east of Graaff-Reinet, and north of Uitenhage. It is bounded on the north by a lofty chain of mountains, separating it from Cradock, and includes the tract lying between these mountains and the Zuurbergen, which form the boundary of Uitenhage to the south. The Fish River divides this division into two parts; that part east of it being called the division of Bedford. The country is pastoral, chiefly, although in the mountain valleys agriculture is carried on to a considerable extent. The principal rivers are the Great Fish, and its branches—the Kaga, Baviaan's, Little Fish, and Koonap. The town of Somerset is situated at the foot of the Boschberg mountains, on the Little Fish River, in a very beautiful country.

83. Bedford is a new village at the foot of the Kagaberg, in one of the finest regions on the eastern frontier. In the Somerset division are the very fertile valleys called Zwagershoek and Agter Brintjeshoogte; and in the Bedford division are Glenlynden, Glenpringle, and other localities, valleys on the south face of the Great Winterberg range, where the Scotch emigrants, led by the poet Pringle, settled in 1820. The Koonap River separates the division of Bedford



from that of Fort Beaufort. The peak, or rather the table-top, of the Great Winterberg, forming the angle beacon between these two divisions, rises to a height of 7,850 feet. Somerset has an area of about 8,000 square miles, and contains 4,340 white and 6,800 colored inhabitants.

84. Fort Beaufort (*electoral division*): Fort Beaufort and Stockenstrom, or Kat River (*fiscal divisions*).—Fort Beaufort, a small but rich division, including that of Stockenstrom, or the Kat River Settlement, lies east of Somerset and Bedford, north of Albany, and west of Victoria. It is mountainous, and generally well-wooded, and in the Kat River, especially, well-watered and very fertile. The town of Fort Beaufort possesses large military buildings, and is situated on the left bank of the Kat River, which is here crossed by a stone bridge. A large industrial mission station, called Heald Town, is situated three or four miles east of it. The division is well watered by the Koonap and Kat Rivers, and along the foot of the mountains are several valuable sheep farms. The Great Winterberg and Katberg mountains separate Fort Beaufort, on the north, from the division of Queen's Town. The other remarkable mountains are the Chumie and Kromme ranges. The Stockenstrom division or Kat River Settlement forms several fertile valleys, lying between offshoots of the Great Winterberg range. Fort Beaufort division contains 2,149 white and 8,027 colored inhabitants, and has an area of 1,200 square miles.

85. Albany (*electoral division*): Albany and Bathurst (*fiscal divisions*).—The division of Albany, formed and settled by British emigrants in 1820, and now comprising that of Bathurst, includes the country between the Great Fish and Bushman's Rivers, formerly called the Zuurveld, and that lying between the Great Fish and Koonap, as far west as the junction of the latter with the Kaga. It has thus Uitenhage on the west, Bedford and Fort Beaufort on the north, Victoria on the east, and the ocean to the south-east. It is naturally divided into two parts; the coast region, formerly the Zuurveld, now the division of Bathurst, and the Fish River Valley and high lands bounding it, called Upper Albany. The Fish River Valley is generally covered with a dense jungle, and is a very broken country. Along the coast, agricultural pursuits are carried on to a considerable extent.

86. The chief town of Albany and the capital of the Eastern Province is Graham's Town (*vide* Chief Towns). Bathurst, a pleasant village about seven miles from the coast,



is the seat of magistracy in the Bathurst division. Salem, Sidbury, and Riebeek are considerable villages. The principal rivers are the Great Fish, on the north and east, the Koonap, the Bushman, Kareiga, Kasuga, and Kowie; at the mouth of the latter, considerable harbor improvements are now being carried on.

87. No considerable mountain ranges occur in Albany, the Zuurbergen appearing gradually to subside near the mouth of the Great Fish River, the highest points being the Governor's Kop, about 2,700 feet, and Woest's Hill, near Graham's Town, about 2,200 feet. There are educational mission stations of the Wesleyan community at Salem and Farmerfield, in this division. The area of Albany is estimated at 3,000 square miles, and its population, including Graham's Town, is 6,133 white and 6,511 colored inhabitants.

88. Victoria (*electoral division*): Queen's Town, or Victoria (North), Victoria (South), and Peddie (*fiscal divisions*).—Queen's Town, or Victoria (North), forms an electoral division with Victoria (South) and Peddie, but is, geographically speaking, totally separated from them by a chain of high mountains,—the Katberg, Gaikaskop, and Amatola ranges. It includes the basin of the Great Kei River, between the Stormbergen on the north and the Kat and Amatola mountains on the south. Its eastern boundary, also that of the colony, is the Indwe River, to its junction with the Great Kei, and thence to the eastern part of the Amatola mountains, which separate it, on the south, from British Kaffraria; its western boundary is the division of Cradock. It was founded in 1853 by Sir G. Cathcart, out of part of Kafirland Proper, and is a highly fertile and well-watered region. The rivers are all tributaries of the Great Kei, and include the White Kei, Black Kei, Indwe, Cacadu, Klaas Smit's, Thomas, and Klip Plaats Rivers. Great facilities for irrigation exist, and the country, being thickly settled, is generally very prosperous. Many mountain ranges, offshoots of the Stormbergen, intersect it. The highest peak is Hangklip (6,800 feet). The principal town is Queen's Town, on the Indwe River. Whittlesea, a small village on the Oxkraal River, Lesseyton, Shiloh, and Kamastone, are considerable mission stations. Queen's Town has an area of about 6,500 square miles, and a population of 1,887 white and 6,880 colored inhabitants.

89. Victoria (South), comprises the country formerly called the neutral territory, lying between the Great Fish River and the Kieskamma and Chumie Rivers. It was formed by

Sir H. Smith, in 1848. It may be described as a terrace, flanked on each side with deep kloofs, and comprises the division of Victoria on the north and Peddie on the south of it. The chief town is Alice, on the Chumie River, about twelve miles east of Fort Beaufort, formerly known by the name of Blockdrift.

90. Peddie, a military post and village, about twelve miles east of the Great Fish River, and twenty miles from the coast, is the chief place in the division of the same name; and Wooldridge, a few miles distant from it, near the head of the Beka River, has been lately founded by the German settlers.

91. The principal rivers are the Chumie, Kat and Keiskamma, the Beka and Chalumna. No mountain ranges of any importance occur; the whole region, indeed, being a high terrace, properly a ramification or offshoot of the Katberg and Amatola ranges. Many German settlers have lately been located in the Peddie division, where there are also large numbers of Fingoes. Between Victoria (South) and Queen's Town, the country near the mountains is very fertile, as is also that near the coast, but the kloofs on each side of the central table-land are steep and bushy. The area of Victoria (South) and Peddie is about 1,400 square miles, and it has a population, including the German settlers, of about 1,500 white and 11,150 colored inhabitants. The German villages of Hamburg and Wooldridge, lately formed, are situated in the division of Peddie. The three divisions of Albert, Queen's Town, and South Victoria occupy the entire line of the eastern frontier from the Orange River to the sea.

### CHAPTER III.—CHIEF CITIES AND TOWNS.

92. The chief cities and towns in the Cape colony worthy of a particular description are *Cape Town*, the capital, founded in 1652, and now containing 25,199 inhabitants. It is the seat of government and of a bishop of the Church of England and that of Rome. It possesses a college and museum, an excellent library, five banks, several other public companies, a botanic garden, a citadel and large military buildings, many flour mills, saw mills, and gas works; and a handsome structure, intended for a new museum and library, is now in progress. It is a port of considerable trade, no less than 727 vessels having entered its port in the year

ending 31st December, 1857, and the customs duties received during the same period amounted to £123,978.

93. Cape Town lies on the shores of Table Bay, at the foot of Table Mountain, and is composed of streets generally arranged at right angles to each other. It is well supplied with water, but, with many natural advantages, the artificial drainage is generally very defective. Four small wooden jetties afford insufficient accommodation for the trade of the city. The principal public buildings are the St. George's cathedral, the Dutch Reformed church, public library and commercial exchange, town hall, castle and military barracks. The town is lighted with gas, and the streets paved, but foot-paths are generally wanting. The markets are well supplied with meat, fruit, and vegetables. Large works, connected with a harbor of refuge in Table Bay, are now about to be commenced.

94. *Graham's Town*, the chief town and capital of the eastern province, was founded in 1812, and is situated in the division of Albany, about 600 miles east of Cape Town, near the sources of the Kowie River, 1,728 feet above the level of the sea, about twenty-five miles distant from the coast and ninety from Port Elizabeth, contains 845 houses, besides huts, and 5,432 inhabitants, and is the seat of a large military establishment. It is an episcopal city, and has a cathedral (a very plain building), large barracks, two banks, three insurance companies, several churches, and other public institutions. It is the centre of a considerable trade with the interior.

95. *Port Elizabeth*, the port of the eastern districts, in Algoa Bay, was founded in 1826, and now contains 4,793 inhabitants. The customs dues received in the year ending 31st December, 1858, amounted to not less than £122,036. It is a very thriving and active, bustling town, although in no way distinguished for the beauty of its buildings. It contains a fort, two banks, two insurance companies, a hospital, several churches, and other public institutions. Nearly all the trade of the eastern districts, Free State, and Betjouanaland passes through Port Elizabeth. A light-house is situated on Cape Recife, about eight miles south of the town.

96. Graaff-Reinet may be styled the capital of the midland districts. It is a flourishing inland town, about 160 miles north of Port Elizabeth, founded in 1784. It contains 3,662 inhabitants, two banks, several churches, &c. The streets are laid out at right angles, planted with trees, and watered



by streams led out from the Sunday's River. The high range of the Sneeuwberg surrounds the basin in which this town is situated.

97. The other principal towns have been noticed in our description of the different divisions, and offer nothing remarkable. The order of population of the principal towns is as follows :

Paarl.....	3,800	inhabitants
Stellenbosch.....	3,926	„
Swellendam.....	2,276	„
Worcester.....	2,072	„
George.....	1,934	„
Wellington.....	1,672	„

#### CHAPTER IV.—HISTORY OF THE CAPE COLONY.

98. The Cape colony was founded by the Dutch government in 1652, was conquered by the English in 1795, given up by them in 1803, and again recaptured in 1806; since which time it has prospered exceedingly. When the Cape became a British colony, in 1806, the boundaries were the Great Fish River, on the east; and on the north, an imaginary line from the Buffel's River, on the Atlantic, to Plettenberg's Baken, on the Zeekoe River, in the Colesberg district, and from thence to the Stormberg Spruit. The boundaries have been since gradually enlarged, so as to include all the country south of the Orange River and west of the Wittebergen, the Indwe, and Keiskamma. The principal historical events, since 1806, are the Kafir wars of 1812, 1819, 1828, 1835-6, 1846-7, and 1851-2; the introduction of British settlers in 1820; the emigration of the Dutch boers, 1837-8-9; the settlement of Natal colony in 1843-4; the extension of the boundary to the Orange River and Keiskamma in 1848-9; the annexation of British Kaffraria in 1848; the granting of a constitution and the present system of government in 1853; the Kafir famine and dispersion of their race in 1856-7; the projected introduction of railways and improvements to the harbor of Table Bay in 1857; and the introduction of European emigrants in 1858. We may here add, as this work is going through the press, that the contract for constructing our first railway has been accepted by an English company. (For other most remarkable events, *vide* Table of Chronology—Appendix III.)

CHAPTER V.—JUDICIAL, FISCAL, MILITARY, MUNICIPAL,  
ECCLESIASTICAL, AND OTHER INSTITUTIONS.

99. The judicial establishment of the Cape colony consists of a supreme court, presided over by a chief justice and three puisne judges. Circuit courts, for both civil and criminal cases, are held twice a year in twenty of the principal towns and villages of the colony, and appeals can be made from the circuit court decision to the supreme court, in Cape Town, and thence to the Privy Council, in England. The foundation of the laws of the Cape colony is the old Roman-Dutch, modified, however, in a certain degree. The civil commissioners and resident magistrates have all a limited local jurisdiction.

100. The revenue of the Cape colony is derived from a moderate duty on all goods imported (with some few exceptions), quitrents, stamp duties, and duties on the transfer of landed property, and several other minor sources. It amounted, in the year ending 31st March, 1858, to £407,772, and the expenditure to £353,105. (For tables showing amount of imports, exports, &c., *vide* Appendix 1).

101. The military defences of the Cape colony consist of the old Dutch works to guard the approaches to Table and Simon's Bays, and the numerous forts and other strong places, constructed by the British government, to repel the incursions of the Kafir tribes, at different periods, on the eastern frontier and in British Kaffraria. An average force of five or six thousand regular troops has been, for some years back, maintained on our eastern frontier and in British Kaffraria, and numerous local corps of volunteers—infantry, cavalry, and artillery—have been lately raised, both in the Western and Eastern divisions.

102. The Cape colony enjoys, to a great extent, the privilege of municipal institutions. Cape Town and all the principal towns of the colony are now self-governing in many local respects. In Cape Town, the police force is established on the London principle, and the city also enjoys the luxury of gas-light. Graham's Town shares with it the advantages of water-pipes, which will, no doubt, be used in several other localities before many years have expired.

103. Of the ecclesiastical establishments, the clergy of the Dutch Reformed Church constitute the most numerous body in the Cape colony, and their salaries are paid by government. The constitution of the church is presbyterian, and the



doctrines are those contained in the Confession of the Synod of Dort and the Heidelberg Catechism, and similar to those adopted by the Church of Scotland. Allowances are also granted to the episcopal clergy and other denominations, in a more or less modified degree; but, theoretically, perfect religious freedom exists, the law recognizing no denominational distinction of churches or sects. Missionaries from nearly every institution in Europe and America are found throughout South Africa, from Cape Town to the Zambezi.

104. The educational system of the Cape colony is under the charge of a superintendent-general, and is based on a system recommended by Sir J. Herschel, in 1841. Schoolmasters, receiving a certain stipend from the government, are established in nearly all the towns and villages in the Cape colony. The various junior members of the public service have been, for some years back, selected from candidates who have passed a public competitive examination.

105. A public board of examiners has been (1858) lately appointed, who are authorized to grant degrees in the different branches of science and art.

106. The South African College was founded in 1829, is well attended, and has professors of mathematics, classics, physical science, &c.

#### CHAPTER VI.—PUBLIC WORKS—ROADS AND MOUNTAIN PASSES.

107. During the last fifteen years, large sums of money have been expended in opening up and improving the different passes on the main lines of roads of the Cape colony. Among them we may mention the hard road over the Cape Flats, made in 1843-4-5; the road over the Hottentots' Holland mountains, called Sir Lowry's Pass, made in 1829-30; the Fransche Hoek road, 1832-3; Montagu Pass, 1845-9 (formerly Cradock's Pass), over the Outeniqua mountains, near the town of George; Mostert's Hoek, now Mitchell's Pass (opening the Warm and Cold Bokkeveld), 1849-50-51; Bain's Kloof, in connection with the former, across the Drakenstein mountains, completed in 1853-4. In the last year, considerable works have been undertaken in the Pikenier's Kloof, improving the communication of Cape Town with Clanwilliam, and at Meiring's Poort, opening a road through the Zwarteberg, between the Beaufort district and the port of Aliwal (South)

or Mossel Bay. Large improvements have also been commenced on the road between Port Elizabeth and Graaff-Reinet, and between Middelburg and the latter town. It is also proposed to throw bridges over the Great Fish, Zwartkop's, Koonap, and Orânge Rivers. Between Graham's Town and Cradock, improvements have likewise been commenced, and the Great Zuurberg Pass, between Port Elizabeth and Somerset, which has been for many years in hand, is now on the point of completion.

#### CHAPTER VII.—BRITISH KAFFRARIA.

108. British Kaffraria, within its present limits, comprehends the country between the Keiskamma and Great Kei Rivers; bounded on the north by the Amatola mountains, and from their eastern extremity by the high road from King William's Town to Queen's Town, as far as the Great Kei River, an area of about 4,000 square miles. It is the region from whence issued, until finally subjected to British rule, those hordes of Kafir marauders who devastated our frontier in the various wars from 1806 till 1853, actuated by love of plunder or excited to fanaticism by false prophets, often the tools of the ambition of the chiefs.

109. British Kaffraria was first declared a British province by Sir Benjamin D'Urban, after the war of 1835-6, under the name of the province of Queen Adelaide; but the measure being disapproved of by the home government, it was, with few restrictions, given back to the Kafir chiefs, together with the country between the Great Fish and Keiskamma Rivers, then called the neutral territory, now forming the division of South Victoria. After the Kafir war of 1846-7, Sir Harry Smith, then Governor, again formed it into a British province, re-establishing King William's Town, on the Buffalo River, as its principal town and seat of military head-quarters. Since that time the elements of order and civilization have been gradually extending, and King William's Town is now a flourishing town, with numerous public buildings and establishments. Many military posts are established in the most important positions.

110. The port of British Kaffraria is at the mouth of the Buffalo River, where considerable harbor improvements are now carrying on, and is called East London.

111. British Kaffraria is bounded on the north by lofty, well-wooded, and romantic chains of mountains, a continuation

of the Great Winterberg, called the Amatolas, which separates it from the Queen's Town division. It is well watered by the Keiskamma—the boundary between it and the Cape colony—and its tributary, the Chumie, the Buffalo, Gonubi, Chalumna, and other torrents, generally running a short and tortuous course in deep beds, and the Great Kei, a considerable stream which forms its eastern boundary and separates it from Kafirland Proper. Its physical aspect is similar to that of Lower Albany, namely, a coast region, intersected by deep wooded river-valleys, and bounded, at a distance of about forty miles from the coast, by a lofty mountain range. It is generally a pastoral country, but in many places well adapted for agricultural pursuits, and presenting much attractive scenery and well-wooded ranges of hills.

112. *Population.*—The bulk of the inhabitants are of the Kafir race, living under the rule of their chiefs and under the general superintendence of the High Commissioner, who is also Governor of the Cape colony; but in the towns are found many English and German settlers. The late famine, consequent on the superstitious belief in the prophecies of the false prophet, Umhlakasa, has contributed, however, to break up and disperse the greater part of the followers of the Kafir chiefs, many of whom are now in confinement in the colony for various offences against law and order, and their hereditary rule is consequently much broken up. Many German settlers, portions of the British-German Legion, who served during the late Russian war, have, within the last three years, been located along the line of the Buffalo River, extending from the port of East London to the eastern point of the Amatola mountains; and several little military villages and settlements have been founded.

113. The Kafirs living in British Kaffraria are generally called Amakosa Kafirs, and include the Gaika tribes, under the chiefs Sandilli, the 'Tslambi, under Umhala, and the Amagonubie, formerly under Pato, besides some minor tribes. Owing to the late famine and consequent dispersion of these tribes, their numbers have been lately reduced to an extent almost unprecedented in the history of mankind (*vide par.* 123).

114. *Towns.*—King William's Town was originally founded by Sir B. D'Urban, in 1836, but was for many years abandoned. It was refounded by Sir H. Smith, in 1848. It now contains several large military buildings, excellent houses and stores, three churches, &c. It is situated on the



left bank of the Buffalo River, about eighty miles east of Graham's Town, and thirty-six from the port of East London. Its population, exclusive of military, is about 1,200 souls.

115. East London, at the mouth of the Buffalo, is the port of British Kaffraria, and large works are at present being carried on for its improvement. At present, the anchorage is rather exposed. A military post, called Fort Glamorgan, defends the port.

116. Forts Hare, Cox, Glamorgan, Pato, Grey, Keiskamma Hoek, Murray, and Izeli, points which will eventually form the nuclei of important villages, are all military posts, more or less considerable.

117. Along the left bank of the Buffalo are a chain of military villages, lately formed by the German Legion, extending from East London to the east point of the Amatola mountains. The chief is Stutterheim, near the old Dohne missionary station, close to the eastern termination of the Amatola mountains. Of the others, we may name Panmure, Berlin, Jackson, &c.

118. His Excellency the High Commissioner has lately granted to such settlers as can fulfil certain conditions, farms on both sides of the principal lines of road leading from the colony to King William's Town, with a view of turning the agricultural and other capabilities of the country to the best advantage, and introducing a laboring rural population.

119. *Mission Stations and Churches.*—There are many mission stations of the Church of England, Independent, and Wesleyan churches, in British Kaffraria. The chief are St. John's, Sandilli's Kraal, Keiskamma Hoek, and Umhala's Kraal (Church of England); Peulton, Knapp's Hope, and Lovedale. (Independent); and Mount Coke (Wesleyan). British Kaffraria is an archdeaconry of the diocese of Graham's Town. Besides these stations, there are churches in King William's Town and East London.

120. *Government.*—At present the government of British Kaffraria is quite distinct from that of the Cape colony, and is under martial law, modified, however, to meet the peculiar features of society there. Local courts are established under the High Commissioner, for the trial of all offences and recovery of debts, &c. Each important tribe of Kafirs has a resident special magistrate. A rayon of one mile and a half round the port of East London is included in the colony and subject to its laws, being included in the division of Port Elizabeth.



121. *Roads and Communications.*—Within the last two or three years, by the exertion of military working parties and Kafir laborers, the communications have been much improved, and the works now in progress at the mouth of the Buffalo, to improve the port of East London, have been already noticed.

122. *Animals.*—In British Kaffraria there are few of the larger antelopes, and no lions, elephants, &c., found. Generally speaking, on the coast region of Kafirland, all the game of any size has been for many years destroyed.

123. The following abstract of the population returns of British Kaffraria on the 1st June, 1858, compiled by the government of British Kaffraria, will show the immense decrease of the population consequent on the destruction of food, caused by the false prophecies of the impostor, Umhlakasa :

	No. of Kraals or Villages.	Adults.	Children.	Total.
Kafir population.—1st June, 1857	3,942	50,045	54,676	104,721
„ 1st June, 1858	1,291	27,320	24,866	52,186
Decrease in one year .....	2,651	22,725	29,810	52,535

And the decrease is even more, as in the census for 1858 are included many natives in King William's Town and crown reserves, not in the census of June 1, 1857. By the same return, the European population of British Kaffraria, on the 1st June, 1858, consisted of—German military settlers, 2,119; other Europeans, 1,792; total European population, 3,911; of which the proportion of women was about one to four.

#### CHAPTER VIII.—NATAL.

124. *History.*—The region now forming the colony of Natal derives its name from being discovered by the Portuguese on Christmas-day, 1498. It was visited, about 1822, by several white traders, who found the country in possession of the Zulu tyrant, Chaka, who ruled in the most sanguinary manner over all the tribes from the Umzimculu to the Umfolozi or St. Lucia River. He was killed and succeeded by his brother, Dingaan, in 1838; but the latter having treacherously massacred a large party of the emigrant Dutch farmers who had made their way to his kraal, by invitation to sell land, over the mountains from the Cape colony, he was attacked, and finally destroyed by the Dutch boers, who made his brother,

Panda, paramount chief, and settled themselves as lords and masters in his country. In 1842, after severe resistance on the part of the boers, that part of it now forming the colony of Natal was taken possession of by the British government, and proclaimed a British colony on the 12th May, 1843; since which time, although laboring under many severe disadvantages, from want of capital and labor, it has progressed very satisfactorily, and bids fair to become one of the most valuable dependencies of the British crown.

125. *Boundaries.*—The colony of Natal is bounded on the west by the Umzimculu River, which separates it from Kafirland Proper; a range of high and almost impassable mountains, called the Quathlamba or Drakensberg, a continuation of the Sneeuwbergen and Stormbergen, in the Cape colony, divides it from Basutoland and the Free State; on the east, the Utugela and Umsungati or Buffel's Rivers divide it from the Zulu country and a small strip of territory claimed by the Transvaal boers; on the south-east is the Indian Ocean. It has an area of about 25,000 square miles.

126. *Surface—Rivers, Mountains, &c.*—The proximity of the high mountain ranges above mentioned, and their various ramifications, gives a general character of irregularity and roughness to the surface; indeed, the whole of the mountains may be considered spurs or offshoots of the Quathlamba. The great basin of the Tugela River includes, perhaps, one half the area of the whole colony, and forms an elevated plateau, considerably higher than the coast region. The principal tributaries of the Tugela are the Mooi, Klip, Great and Little Bushman, and Buffel's Rivers. The Umzimculu and Umcomansi, near the boundary, run through a very difficult and broken country, intersected by spurs of the Quathlamba. The Umgani and Umvoti are likewise important streams. None of these rivers, however, are navigable. Some considerable falls occur on many of the rivers; one, on the Umgani, near Pietermaritzberg, is 280 feet, and another, near the source of the Tugela, still higher.

127. *Counties.*—Natal is divided into the following counties:—D'Urban and Victoria, coast region; Pietermaritzburg, Umcomansi, and Umvoti, central; Klip River and Weenen, foot of mountains.

128. *Towns and Villages.*—The principal towns and villages are Pietermaritzburg, the capital, with 1,470 white inhabitants, situated on a branch of the Umgani River, about fifty miles inland (possessing a bank, several military establishments,

churches, &c.); D'Urban or Port Natal, the port, with 1,200 inhabitants; Ladismith on Klip River, near the foot of the Drakensberg mountains, Weenen, Verulam, Richmond, and Albert. On the east of the Umsungati or Buffel's River, the boers have built a small village, called Utrecht, belonging to the Transvaal Republic, on a piece of territory claimed by them

129. *Population*.—The population of Natal consists of Dutch farmers, English emigrants, and a large amount of the Kafir races, the remains of tribes who have from time to time taken refuge within our boundary from the tyranny of the Zulu chiefs living east of the Utugela. By a table in the Cape almanac for 1858, the sum total of the population is stated at 6,550 white and 102,105 colored. Of the white, 3,600 are British, and 2,950 of Dutch descent.

130. *Religion, Education*.—Natal forms a diocese of a colonial bishop of the Church of England, and places of worship for many denominations of Christians exist. Many mission stations of the American, Norwegian, German, and other societies have been founded. Education is receiving increased attention, and schools are multiplying.

131. *Productions*.—Natal produces sugar, coffee, indigo, arrowroot, pine apples, and many other tropical productions, and several sugar-mills, &c., have lately been erected in the region near the coast, and are now working with considerable success. Near the mountains, the different European cereals are grown to a great extent.

132. *Climate*.—The climate of Natal, as may be seen from its productions, is almost tropical; yet it is considered extremely healthy. Fevers and other epidemics are almost unknown, except in a few marshy spots near the coast. Thunderstorms are frequent in summer, and often extremely violent, causing at times loss of life. In winter, the peaks of the Quathlamba mountains, which rise to a height of about 8,000 feet, and 4,000 feet above the high plains at their base, are generally, for three or four months, covered with snow. In the basin of the Tugela River, which lies higher than the coast region, the climate is much cooler, and resembles that of the Free State. The general range of the thermometer, near the coast, is from 53° to 90°. The summer is the rainy season.

133. *Animals*.—Natal formerly abounded in the usual larger African animals, and a considerable quantity of ivory was exported. Of late years, however, the elephant and rhinoceros have retired before the footsteps of man. The

alligator is found in some of the rivers. A large species of boa is likewise found; and traveling on to the north-east it appears as if serpent life increases in size.

134. *Minerals.*—Report speaks favorably of the mineral wealth of Natal, but no mines of any metal have been as yet worked. Coal is found in two or three localities. The geological features of the Quathlamba, as far as known, resemble those of the Sneeuwberg and Stormberg ranges of the Cape colony.

135. *Government.*—Natal is governed by a Lieut.-Governor, and has lately received a constitution somewhat similar to that possessed by the Cape colony. Municipal institutions have been granted to the principal towns.

136. *Roads, Communications, and Harbors.*—There is no practicable road across the mountain range, except the De Beer and Bezuidenhout Passes, which lead by a very circuitous route through the Free State to the Cape colony. Owing to the number of rivers running in deep beds from the mountains, traveling here is difficult, and when the rivers are flooded, considerable delays are experienced. The only port is the nearly land-locked basin of Port Natal, the entrance of which, however, is impeded by a bar of shifting sand, on which the depth of water varies from 9 to 15 feet.

## BOER REPUBLICS.

### CHAPTER IX.—ORANGE FREE STATE.

137. The Orange Free State forms a sort of connecting link between the Cape colony, the Transvaal Republic, and Natal. It consists chiefly of vast undulating plains, which slope down from the Maluti mountains to the Vaal River, dotted over, however, in many places, with rocky hills, here locally called kopjes; although in the northern part hundreds of square miles are found with hardly a break on the horizon.

138. The boundaries of the Free State are, on the west and north, the Vaal River, to its source in the Likwa Spruit, in the Drakensberg mountains, which divides it from Betjounaland and the Transvaal boer republic; the Drakensberg mountains, on the north-east, separate it from Natal; the Wittebergen, an offshoot of the former, a line dividing the waters of the Caledon River from those of the Vaal, and thence to a point on the Orange River, a few miles



north of the Kraai River, divide it from Basutoland or Moshesh's country;\* the Orange River, as far as its junction with the Caledon, separates it from the Cape colony; and from thence to the Vaal, it is bounded by the independent territory of the Griquas, a narrow strip of country which interposes between it and the colonial divisions of Colesberg and Albert. It contains an area of about 50,000 square miles.

139. This large surface generally consists of vast plains, with little wood, except along the water-courses which traverse it. All its rivers—among which may be named the Modder, Riet, Valsche, Little and Great Vet, Wilge, Liebenberg's Vlei—fall into the Vaal River, except the Caledon, which is itself a considerable stream, and, like the latter, one of the chief affluents of the Orange River.

140. The Caledon, Vaal, Orange, Umzimvobo, and Tugela Rivers, draining, respectively, the Cape colony, Free State, Kaffraria, and Natal, running to all four points of the compass, rise in or near the Mount of Sources, in the north-western angle of Natal colony, and the highest point in the great mountain range, a continuation of that of the Cape colony, which divides the Free State and Basutoland from Natal and Kafirland—(for a description of which, see Basutoland). The country formerly supported vast herds of large game—which are still found, though in diminished numbers,—and lying very high, is admirably adapted for the growth of wool.

141. *Divisions.*—The Free State is divided into the following

Districts.	Chief Towns and Villages.
BLOEMFONTEIN .....	{ Bloemfontein. Boshof.
WINBURG.....	{ Winburg. Cronstadt.
SMITHFIELD.....	Smithfield.
HARRISMITH.....	Harrismith.
FAURESMITH.....	Fauresmith.

142. *Towns.*—The chief town and seat of government is Bloemfontein, about 150 miles north-west of Colesberg, on a tributary of the Modder River, in latitude 29° 8', south. It contains about 150 houses, a Dutch, Episcopal, and Roman Catholic church. In 1857, not less than 2,200 bales of wool were sold in this town. A small fort, mounting some cannon,

\* This part of the boundary is still a fertile source of dispute between the Basutus and the burghers of the Free State.

and erected by the British government during its occupation of the country, is situated in a commanding position near the town. Smithfield, about thirty-five miles north of Aliwal (North), near the Caledon River; Fauresmith, on the Griqua boundary; and Winburg and Harrismith, on the high road from Natal to the Cape colony, which passes through the Sovereignty, are all flourishing villages. The two latter, however, are but inconsiderable. Cronstadt and Boshof are lately formed villages, as yet in embryo. These villages are generally the seat of a Dutch Reformed Church.

143. By the latest returns, the population of the Free State was 12,859 white and about 5,000 colored inhabitants, exclusive of wild Bushmen and migratory Betjouanas and Korannas. The revenue for 1857 amounted to about £17,500.

144. The country now forming the Free State was, a few years ago, as Captain Harris describes it, a "howling wilderness," inhabited by wandering hordes of Bushmen and broken tribes of Betjouana and Kafir refugees from the armies of the great Zulu tyrants,—Chaka, Dingaan, and Moselekatse. After the Kafir war of 1835–6, a spirit of dissatisfaction arising in the minds of many of the frontier Dutch farmers, an extensive emigration took place from the colony, which extended as far north and east as the Vaal River, and over the mountains to Natal; and gradually the farmers settled down along the water-courses of these vast plains, then tenanted by immense herds of the larger game. By degrees, the attitude of these farmers, in proclaiming their independence of the British crown, attracted the notice of government, and in 1848, after some opposition and one or two conflicts with our troops, the country was annexed by Sir H. Smith to the British empire, and continued so until 1854, when Her Majesty's Commissioner, Sir G. Clerk, formally gave it up, and allowed the inhabitants to form a government according to their own wishes. The government is now in the hands of a president, freely elected by the landdrost and heemraden in the several districts, while the volksraad exercise legislative functions. During the last year, serious difficulties have arisen between the government of the Free State and the Basutu chief, Moshesh, and an appeal to arms, without causing very serious consequences on either side, has been the result. The British government has been called in as arbitrator in these differences.

145. *Animals.*—Nearly all the larger antelopes are found on the plains of the Sovereignty, and lions are also still

numerous; but the giraffe, rhinoceros, and elephant are not now to be found south of the Vaal River; except the latter, as before mentioned, in some of the dense forests near the coast in the Cape colony and Natal.

146. The principal productions of the Sovereignty are wool, cattle, corn, hides, and antelope skins. It contains upwards of a million of woolled sheep. No minerals of any kind are found in sufficient quantity to pay working. Timber, for building purposes, is scarce; for fuel, willows and acacia are found along the water-courses. Stone is procured in abundance. Lime is scarce.

147. The country lying high (about 5,000 feet above the level of the sea), is cold in winter, and in summer experiences violent thunder-storms. It is very healthy and favorable to European constitutions. Long droughts often prevail.

148. *Roads.*—The country being level, the roads, generally, are very good. The great main road from Cape Town to Port Natal passes in a circuitous manner through it, the immense mountain ranges of the Maluti being quite impassable, except through one or two passes north of the Wittebergen. None of the rivers can be made available for internal communication, owing to the frequent occurrence of shallows, rapids, &c.

#### CHAPTER X.—THE TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC.

149. *Description.*—The Transvaal Republic includes all the country north of the Vaal River, and on both slopes of the Magaliesberg or Cashan mountains, which form the watershed line between the Orange River and the Limpopo River systems; into which the emigrant farmers retired after the annexation of the Sovereignty or Free State, in 1848, to the British crown. Its limits lie between latitude  $22^{\circ}$  to  $27^{\circ}$  south and longitude  $27^{\circ}$  to  $31^{\circ}$  east.

150. *Boundaries.*—The northern boundary of the republic, although not very clearly defined, may be described as formed by the Ouri or Limpopo River, here running nearly from west to east; its eastern boundary, by the continuation of the Drakensberg mountains, separating it from Natal and the coast region, inhabited by Zulu Kafirs; on the south, it has the Vaal River, to its source, dividing it from the Free State republic; and on the west, an undefined line separates it from the Betjouana tribes, still independent, and the desert



region of the Kalihari. Thus an area of probably not less than 70,000 square miles, is more or less under the control of the emigrant boers of the Free State, who are not very particular or scrupulous in their dealings with the poor native tribes who lived, or live still, in the country they now occupy.

151. *Surface of Country.*—On the east, a well-defined mountain range forms, as it were, the buttress of a lofty plateau, in which the country drained by the Limpopo is situated, and places it quite in a different zone of climate from the coast region. At right angles to the range, nearly, another belt of very high land, called the Magaliesberg range, runs east and west, forming a water-shed line between the river system of the Vaal and Orange and Ouri or Limpopo. The southern face of this range presents lofty undulating plains, generally well watered and abounding with game. To the north, descending into the basin of the Limpopo, many high parallel chains of hills are met with, through narrow poorts or openings in which flow the many streams which form, farther to the north-west, the Ouri or Limpopo. These rivers are generally available for irrigation, and extensive forests cover a great portion of the country.

152. *Rivers.*—Among the rivers running south, and tributary to the Vaal, are the Klakua or Mooi River, Schoon Spruit, and Likwa. On the northern slope are the Pinnaar's, Olifant's or Lepalule (a considerable stream), Aaps, Eland's or Keitling, Marikwa, Moguaree, 'Ngotwane, and many others, which eventually form the Limpopo, a river whose embouchure on the coast is, as yet, not clearly ascertained.

153. *Mountains.*—Beside the principal range of the Drakensberg and Magaliesberg, are the subsidiary ranges of the Chuanyane, Waterberg, Grensberg, Zoutpansberg, generally running from south-west to north-east, and many of them of considerable height. The highest point, perhaps, is Mureke or Hangklip, probably 8,000 feet above the sea; the general level of the country being about 4,000 feet. The range in which this peak is, forms the Mural mountains of Harris and the Magaliesbergen are the same traveler's Cashan mountains.

154. *Towns and Villages.*—The principal towns and villages are Mooiriversdorp or Potchefstroom, on the Klakua or Mooi River, the seat of the local government, about twenty miles north of the Vaal River; Rustenberg, a few miles north of the Magaliesberg; Zoutpansberg, the most remote European village in South Africa, about 60 miles south of the Limpopo,



and 1,260 miles north-east of Cape Town; Leydenberg and Origstadt are places of small importance, about 80 miles south of Zoutpansberg, and other small villages. Pretorius, a few miles north-east of Rustenberg, has lately been founded.

155. *Population.*—The population of the Transvaal State consists principally of emigrant farmers and a mixture of deserters and foreign refugees from the Cape colony and Natal. Their number can hardly be ascertained, but are supposed to amount to at least 18,000 souls. Scattered through the country are numerous kraals of native Betjouanas, who live in a kind of servitude, if not actual slavery, amongst their masters, to whom they have to supply labor whenever required. Education is at a very low ebb; and, indeed, in no part of South Africa is civilization retrograding so much as among our unfortunate fellow-countrymen north of the Vaal River. To the want of proper educational and religious advantages must be attributed the treatment experienced by the excellent Livingstone and many other missionaries and European travelers in these regions.

156. *History.*—The country now called the Transvaal Republic was formerly densely inhabited by tribes of Betjouanas, who were driven out of it, reduced to bondage, or scattered by the terrible Zulu conqueror Moselekatse, who, in turn, had to fly before the muskets of the emigrant boers far to the north, beyond the Limpopo. The stream of emigration from the Cape colony, Natal, and the Free State gradually led all those who were indisposed to live under the forms of an old and settled government into this region, where, in 1848, they founded a sort of Alsatia, or country of refuge for malcontents, which they declared a free and independent republic, under the presidency of Mr. A. Pretorius, who had strenuously opposed British rule in Natal and the Free State a few years before. By the latest accounts, the boers of the north-eastern parts and those of Leydenberg have separated from the southern part of the republic, and declared themselves an independent state. Since that period, the country has been far from settled, and party divisions prevail extensively; while the arts of civilization are every day more and more neglected. The system of government adopted is republican; a president, assisted by a volksraad, or council and heemraden. The community being for many years deprived of educational advantages, it may be supposed their ideas on religion, personal freedom of strangers, liberty of trade, &c., are not the most enlightened. Ministers of

religion and schoolmasters are hardly to be met with; medical practitioners, except a few vile quacks, not to be found. But owing to the impediments thrown in the way of travelers, very little accurate information as to the actual and real condition of these boers is obtainable.\*

157. *Climate*.—North of the Magaliesberg, the tropical nature of the climate begins to manifest itself, and severe fevers annually cut off many of European descent. The fly "tsetse," whose bite is death to the bovine and equine species, abounds in many parts, and renders traveling with horses and oxen difficult. Many very healthy localities, however, are found along the mountain ranges, and the boers are gradually crossing the mountains and settling on their eastern slope, towards Delagoa Bay, in a country called Commatie, which is reported to be healthy.

158. *Animals*.—The elephant, rhinoceros, and larger antelopes, formerly so abundant, and whose chase has been so vividly depicted in the pages of Harris, Gordon Cumming, and other travelers, are gradually disappearing, and retiring into the deserts and marshes north of the Limpopo. Crocodiles and a species of boa are found, but the difficulties thrown in the way of travelers, by the boers, is such that a perfect investigation of the natural history of this part of South Africa, interesting as it may be, can hardly, for the present, be expected. The geology appears to present the same features as the northern parts of the Cape colony, in the mural coronets of the mountain ranges, &c.; and large deposits of copper ore exist in the western part of the continuation of the Magaliesberg range, called the Chuanyane mountains, near Kolobeng.

#### REGIONS INHABITED BY NATIVE TRIBES.

##### CHAPTER XI.—KAFIRLAND PROPER, OR KAFFRARIA.

159. Kafirland, or the country of the Kafirs, formerly included all the coast region of South Africa east of the Cape colony; but since the formation of the colony of Natal it has been separated into two distinct divisions, namely, Kafirland Proper, between the Cape colony and Natal, and Zululand, east of Natal, whose northern limits can hardly be defined. A high range of mountains parallel to the coast, and at an

\* A forthcoming work by Mr. Chapman, who has traveled much in this region, may probably soon supply the deficiency.

average distance of 120 miles from it, forms a distinct boundary, generally, between the native tribes speaking the Kafir language and those speaking the Sechuana and its dialects.

160. *Boundaries*.—Kafirland Proper comprises an area of about 25,000 square miles, and is bounded on the west by British Kaffraria and the division of Queen's Town; on the north-east by the Quathlamba mountains, which divide it from Basutoland; and on the east and north-east, by the colony of Natal; the ocean forms its south-eastern boundary.

161. *Surface*.—The surface is generally irregular, the rivers running in deep valleys. Near the foot of the mountains are elevated plateaux, bare of wood, undulating, and well watered. These plains, however, being very cold in winter, are almost uninhabited. From the edge of these high plateaux we look down on the lowlands of the coast, a district about forty miles in width, and of a very broken and rugged character.

162. *Rivers*.—The principal rivers are the Umzimvobo, which, with its tributaries—the Tsetse and Tena, drains a large tract of country along the foot of the Quathlamba mountains, the Umtata, Bashee, Tsomo, and Umzimculu and its tributaries.

163. *Mountains*.—One or two ranges of mountains run parallel to the Quathlamba, from south-west to north-east; they are called the Matuana and Umtata mountains. Towards Natal, in particular, the country is extremely broken, being traversed by several rugged ranges of mountains, offshoots of the Quathlamba.

164. *Productions*.—The productions of Kafirland resemble those of British Kaffraria; agricultural produce and cattle could be raised to any extent, and the coast region is said to be favorable for the growth of cotton and sugar. It is generally well watered and grassed. Large forests of valuable timber are found along the coast. Hides, horns, and gum are now the principal articles of commerce.

165. *Population*.—Kafirland Proper has an exclusively Kafir population, of nomadic habits, and possesses no fixed towns or viliages. The principal tribes are the Tambookies or Abatembu, and Amagaleka Kafirs, next the Cape colony; the Amaponda and Amabaxa, inhabiting the centre region, drained by the Umzimvobo River; and various broken tribes of Zulu Kafirs, along the Natal boundary. It is difficult even to make an approximation to the number of inhabitants, but they probably do not now exceed 100,000, living between the



colony and Natal. The Amagaleka Kafirs, under the paramount chief Kreili, have suffered much during the late prevalent famine, and their tribes, at present, appear on the point of dissolution. In 1847, the Rev. H. Dugmore estimated their numbers at 70,000 souls; now, probably, the remnant of the tribe does not exceed 20,000.

166. *Manners*.—The habits of the Kafirs are predatory, and their pursuits chiefly pastoral. Corn, mealies, &c., are principally raised by the women, who also build their huts, the men herding and milking the cattle. The system of government is patriarchal, under chiefs of tribes, and the succession, with some modifications, hereditary. They practice polygamy, and use the rite of circumcision. Their religious ideas seem confused and indistinct, although they recognize a Supreme Being as well as a malignant spirit. This latter belief gives rise to the practice of witchcraft and other degrading superstitions, encouraged by the chiefs, in a great degree, for their own private and selfish purposes. The personal appearance of the Kafir is generally prepossessing; the men are generally well made, stout, and robust.

167. *Mission Stations*.—There are several mission stations of the Wesleyan community in Kafirland, at Clarkebury and Beechamwood, among the Tambookies; Butterworth, with the Amagalekas; Shawbury, with the Amabaxa; and Palmerston and Buntingville, with the Amapondas. There is also a mission station of the Church of England, called St. Mark's, at the chief Kreili's kraal, between the Indwe and Tsomo rivers.

168. *Zoology*.—Wild animals have been almost extirpated. A few elephants and buffaloes are still found in the forests of the Umzimvobo; and along the plains at the foot of the mountains, hartebeests and some other large antelopes, and a few ostriches, are occasionally met with.

169. *Climate*.—The climate is healthy, and differs little from that of British Kaffraria or Natal. In the naked and elevated plains near the mountains, the winters are very severe. Thunderstorms are frequent, accompanied, generally, by torrents of rain.

170. *Roads, Harbors, &c.*—The roads are merely beaten tracks across the country, which, owing to the many rivers with short courses running into the sea at right angles to the coast, are difficult to traverse. None of the rivers are navigable, but anchorage is found at Mazeppa and Shepstone Bays, and one or two other points along the coast.



## CHAPTER XII.—REGIONS BEYOND NATAL, INHABITED BY KAFIR RACES.

171. *General Description.*—This immense region extends from the Utugela River, the eastern boundary of Natal, in latitude  $29^{\circ} 20'$  probably, to Sofala and the valley of the Zambezi River, latitude  $19^{\circ}$ , which forms the apparent boundary between the Kafir tribes to the north and the negro races. The principal tribes inhabiting this region are the Amazulu, between Natal and Delagoa Bay, under the chief Umpanda; the Amazwazi, north and west of Delagoa Bay; the Amahute, north-east of it; and the Amatabele, under the renowned chief Moselekatse, who have extended into the regions west of the mountains forming the south slope of the Zambezi valley, and there conquered the Betjouana tribes who inhabit part of the country drained by its tributaries. The coast region of this portion of Kafirland possesses a tropical climate, and is in many places very unhealthy. North of Delagoa Bay it is very little known.

172. *Rivers.*—The principal rivers are the Umfolozi or St. Lucia, the Mánice, the Ouri or Limpopo, the position of whose embouchure on the coast is still uncertain, Rio de Sofala, Imhambane, &c. None of these are navigable for any practical purposes, except, perhaps, the Manice, which disembogues in Delagoa Bay.

173. *Mountains.*—A continuation of the Drakensberg mountains, described in the account of Natal, runs parallel to the coast, and divides this part of Kafirland from the Transvaal Republic and Betjouanaland. A large secondary range, called the Lebombo, runs nearly parallel to the range, but nearer the coast, from the mouth of the Umfolozi to the north of Delagoa Bay.

174. *Population.*—The population consists of the Kafir tribes above described, whose numbers are imperfectly estimated at two millions. At Delagoa Bay, Imhambane, and Sofala, are Portuguese settlements, where a few half-caste Portuguese and Mulattoes reside.

175. *Productions and Commerce.*—Ivory, skins, feathers, horns, and hides are the principal productions of this immense region, the capabilities of which are very imperfectly known. The principal port is Delagoa Bay, although report says an excellent harbor exists near the mouth of St. Lucia River.

176. *Zoology*.—The elephant, lion, buffalo, giraffe, rhinoceros, &c., are found in this region, as well as pythons, alligators, &c. Its natural history is, however, very imperfectly developed, and presents rich mines for the exploration of naturalists.

177. *Climate*.—In the interior, near the mountains, the climate is healthy. Along the coast malaria is prevalent, and the Delagoa fever is greatly dreaded. This has alone prevented the emigrant farmers from settling in this otherwise rich and very fertile country. Immense marshes exist along the coast north of Delagoa to the delta of the Zambezi.

178. *History*.—The tradition of the Kafir tribes, generally, indicates a pressure from the north of these tribes on the Hottentot nations living south of them. The country of the most powerful Kafir nation, that of the Zulus, appears, about thirty years ago, under the rule of the terrible Chaka, to have been a crater, from which poured the horrors of war in all directions on the other Kafir and Betjouana tribes; and the absolute depopulation of the immense plains of the region now known as the Orange Free State, by sheer extermination of its inhabitants, occurred at this period. Chaka being murdered by his successor, Dingaan, the latter proved himself little less bloody, but coming in contact with the emigrant farmers from the Cape colony, in 1837, their guns soon broke up the strength of the once terrible Amazulu, and they are no longer an object of dread to their neighbors, although their own intestine wars are often very bloody. Another dreaded chief, Moselekatse, having also experienced severe proofs of the prowess of the boers, now dwells far to the north, separated by a wide tract of desert country from his dangerous neighbors, and carries on war, on a small scale, with the Makalolo and other Betjouana tribes living near the Zambezi. It must be remembered that the intestine wars among these native tribes, although locally interesting, seldom produce causes weighty enough to make them matter of history.

179. *Laws*.—Generally speaking, the laws and customs prevalent amongst the Kafir tribes living on the borders of the Cape colony are found existing, with certain modifications, amongst all the other tribes, as far as is known of them. The principal difference observed is that the power of the Kafir chiefs living beyond Natal is more despotic and less restrained by their councilors than that possessed by the chiefs of Kafirland Proper.

180. *Language*.—The language spoken by all the different Kafir tribes is, in its present state, that used by the Zulu

Kafirs. It distinguishes only two dialects—the Ukukuluma or the high language, and the Amalala or low; the first used by the Zulus, Abatembus, and Amaxosa Kafirs; the last by the tribes of Natal, the Amabaxa, and frontier Fingoes. Among the frontier tribes the language has been somewhat corrupted by the adoption of some of the clicks of the Hottentot language. The language, the affinities of which have been latterly much studied by Dr. Bleek and the Rev. Mr. Döhne, is sonorous and well adapted for rhetorical purposes, distinguished for its minute accuracy, fullness of expression, and copiousness of form; and it is supposed that it was once the language of a race possessing a far higher degree of cultivation than the Kafirs do at present. By the labors of the missionaries it has now become a written language, but its grammar presents many difficult and complicated forms.

#### REGIONS INHABITED BY HOTTENTOT RACES.

##### CHAPTER XIII.—GREAT NAMAQUALAND.

181. *Distribution.*—The Great Namaqua tribes may be esteemed the most perfect existing types of the original Hottentot race, and they are found more or less mixed with Bastards (Mulattoes, or mixed races), inhabiting all the north-western portions of South Africa, from the Orange River (and even south of it, in Little Namaqualand) to the borders of the Damara country, in latitude 23° south; and to the eastward, as far as the edge of the Kalihari desert, being the region known by the name of Great Namaqualand, in length about 450 miles and 230 miles in width, having an area of about 100,000 square miles.

182. *Description of Country.*—This region is drained by the periodical and seldom running stream, called the Oup, Borradaile, or Great Fish River, which, rising in the high table lands of the Damara country, runs nearly due south, a distance of about 450 miles, into the Orange River, which it enters, about 50 miles from its mouth. It is generally, except in its northern parts, a most sterile and barren region. Its coast, bounded by the South Atlantic, is sandy and waterless; and it is only along the dry channels of the riverbeds that its scanty population find subsistence, as water is generally found by digging in their gravelly covering, and grass abounds along their banks. Towards the north, the



country improves; and there, for the last few years, the greater part of the Namaqua tribes, under several petty chiefs, have located themselves, carrying on a predatory warfare with their more gentle and quiet neighbors, the Damaras and Ovampos, who are rich in cattle. Cultivation is, in the greater part of Namaqualand, quite out of the question, except near the fountains which form the heads of the rivers; and the tribes roam about with their cattle from place to place, according as pasturage and water is plentiful. The description of Little Namaqualand by Mr. C. Bell, the Colonial Surveyor-General, in which he depicts half of it a dreary waste of heavy sand and half of it a howling wilderness of rugged mountain chains and peaks, with extensive tracts, where no blade of grass and no drop of water can be found, equally applies to the greater part of this region.

183. *Rivers*.—The Oup and its branches are the only rivers, if we except certain beds which form the Nosap, a periodical stream draining the Kalihari, and running nearly parallel to the Oup, entering the Orange River, near the great falls of Aukrahies, about 200 miles from its mouth. Although water may generally be found in these beds, yet, owing to the almost constant drought, it seldom flows. Various fountains, many of them hot springs, occur in several localities.

184. *Mountains*.—The valley of the Oup is bounded on each side by ranges of flat-topped, barren mountains; those on the east side losing themselves in the Great Kalihari desert; and on the west side, running down into low ranges of sand-hills, parallel to the shore. Along the Orange River the country is fearfully rugged.

185. *Productions*.—This barren region, however, appears favorable for the rearing of cattle; at least, large troops from the north of the Orange River are brought into the Cape colony, although report declares that they are generally the produce of the forays of the Namaqua tribes on the Damaras living north of them. A little ivory, some ostrich feathers, and gum, are also received, together with copper ore, which has been lately worked, near the sources of the Oup River, by colonial companies. Guano has been found in considerable quantities at Ichaboe and one or two other little islets on the coast. Fish also abounds, and is caught in abundance at Sandwich Harbor and Angra Pequina.

186. *Population*.—The population of Great Namaqualand consists of pure Namaquas, under the chiefs Abram, Jonker Africauder, &c., bastard Hottentots, and a few wandering



Bushmen, and in all, by a rough calculation, does not exceed 40,000 souls. Several mission stations, principally belonging to the Rhenish Society, at Bethany, Bethesda, &c., have been established among the native tribes, but with indifferent success. The Wesleyan community have a station at Nisbet Bath, a hot spring about thirty miles north of the Orange River, with one or two out-stations.

187. It may be interesting here to observe the northern progress of the Hottentot nation since the landing of the white man in South Africa. The chief Ameral, now living on the northern frontier of Great Namaqualand, is descended from chiefs who formerly grazed their flocks on the pastures of Table Mountain, nearly 1,000 miles south of his present kraal.

188. *Roads and Communications.*—Owing to the sterile and dry nature of the country, traveling is attended with much difficulty. The interior can, however, be easily reached from Walwich Bay, latitude  $23^{\circ}$ . On the coast, there is good anchorage, but little fresh water, at Sandwich Harbor, Angra Pequena, and several other places on the coast.

189. *Climate.*—The climate of Namaqualand is in extremes,—in summer, insupportably hot, and the nights cold; in winter, the cold is often very severe. It is intensely dry, and subject to drought of years' duration. The water is generally brackish, and, on the whole, the climate, although not positively unhealthy, makes a continuous residence very trying to European constitutions. In the northern parts, low fevers are sometimes very prevalent. The rainy season commences in November and ends in May, and the rains appear to become more uncertain and scanty as we proceed from north to south; the country about the Orange River being peculiarly subject to intense droughts.

190. *Zoology.*—Lions, elephants, giraffes, and rhinoceri are found in the north-eastern parts, skirting the Kalihari. Snakes and scorpions abound, and are very poisonous. The gemsbok, eland, koodoo, and other large antelopes are numerous. The ostrich is also common.

191. *Botany, &c.*—The botany, geology, &c., of this extensive region is very imperfectly known. The "vnaaras" and "vaus" are two native fruits, much prized, found growing on the sand-hills near Walwich Bay. The geological features appear to resemble those of the northern part of the division of Little Namaqualand, presenting large surfaces of granite, quartz rock, and gneiss, and exhibiting the same indications of deposits of copper ore.

192. *Language*.—The language spoken by the different Namaqua tribes and other Hottentot races, owing to the difficult clicks it abounds in, has been always considered a most uncouth and barbarous tongue. The Rev. Mr. Tindall, however, says its construction is most beautiful and regular. It has been reduced by the missionaries to grammatical rules, and portions of the scriptures have been printed in it. The different Koranna and Bushmen dialects vary very much, and the tribes speaking them, frequently, can hardly understand each other. The Namaqua language is still used in the Cape colony, in Little Namaqualand, by the wandering tribes living in the northern parts of the divisions of Calvinia and Beaufort, and in the different large mission establishments, such as Mamre, Genadendal, Hankey, Bethelsdorp, &c. Save by a few very old people, the original language of the Hottentots is quite extinct.

#### CHAPTER XIV.—KORANNAS AND BUSHMEN.

193. *Korannas*.—The Korannas are a nearly pure Hottentot race, inferior in appearance and intelligence to the Great Namaquas and Griquas, and speaking a dialect of the Hottentot language. They are found leading a wandering pastoral life, along the banks of the Orange and Vaal Rivers, or living in temporary kraals or hamlets in their vicinity, or hunting for support. They cultivate little, and chiefly depend on their herds.

194. *Bushmen*.—The Bosjesmans or Bushmen, called, in their native tongue, Quaiquaæ, are a still poorer and more degraded tribe of the same; and the miserable-looking specimens which are from time to time exhibited in Europe, give rise to that contemptible notion which is generally prevalent, of the stunted physical and intellectual powers of the Hottentot.

195. *Localities*.—The Bushmen are found scattered over South Africa, in small tribes or families, from the north of the Karree mountains, in the division of Beaufort, and north of the Hantam, in the Calvinia division, to the bank of the Zambezi, north of Lake Ngami; and from the rugged valleys near the sources of the Orange River, on the east, to the Atlantic Ocean on the west. Even the inhabitants of the Cape colony are accustomed to see, in the Bushmen living near them, a pigmy race, possessing the true Hottentot features, hair, and certain other personal peculiarities, which need not

here be adverted to; but advancing north, into the Kalihari desert, the Bushman improves in stature, and presents a very fair specimen of humanity. The southern limits of the race are tolerably well known, but not so the northern. Some would even suppose the existence of the race as far north as the valley of the Nile.

196. *Manners and Customs.*—The Bushmen use, generally, the bow and poisoned arrow. They capture game by pitfalls, poisoned water, and other stratagems. They live either in caves in the mountains or huts made with mats of the most fragile nature; they never cultivate, excepting, perhaps, a little dacha or wild hemp (their opium), for smoking; gorge on animal food when they can get it; otherwise they devour bulbs, wateruintjes, ants' eggs, locusts, and any other garbage they can get; have a very indistinct idea of a Supreme Being, and a more indistinct one of *meum* and *tuum*, as far as bucolics are concerned. They speak various dialects of the Hottentot language, but a Bushman from the Quathlamba mountains would hardly understand one from the coast of the Atlantic. When the Cape was first settled, the Bushman tribes, although even then predatory, were found as far south as Riebeek's Kasteel, under the name of Sonquas; and the strange paintings in their rock-caves are found in nearly every part of the colony.

197. *Predatory Habits.*—The Natal colonists still complain of some predatory tribes of these wanderers, who live in the upper valleys of the Orange River. In the Cape colony, there are still a few to be found in the northern part of the Clanwilliam, Beaufort, and Colesberg divisions; also some in the north-eastern angle of the Queen's Town division, near the sources of the Indwe River.

#### CHAPTER XV.—GRIQUAS AND GRIQUALAND.

198. *Griqualand.*—Griqualand, or the territory inhabited by races of mixed Hottentot and European blood, includes the region along the Orange River and around its junction with the Vaal; thus interposing between the colony, on one side, and Betjouanaland and the Free State, on the other.

199. *Description of Surface.*—Along the Orange River, before its junction with the Vaal, the country is dry and barren in the extreme, except in the immediate vicinity of the stream. Wandering hordes of Korannas and Bushmen,



who lead a very miserable and precarious existence, are generally found here. Near the junction of the Orange River with the Vaal, and to the east of it, the country improves, and is equal, if not superior, to any of the north-eastern parts of the Cape colony, especially for sheep-farming. Here the Griquas, under the chiefs Adam Kok and Waterboer, are principally settled; and many of them are very wealthy. The boundary between the Griqua territory and the Free State Republic is rather difficult to define.

200. *Population.*—The Griquas are the descendants of the Dutch boers and their Hottentot slaves, settled along the northern districts of the colony. They were collected in the region they now occupy, about thirty-five years ago, by the London missionaries, Read and Anderson. They are a tall, athletic, good-looking race, of a light olive color, indolent and careless of the future, but generally good-natured and hospitable. They are fond of hunting and exploring, and occasionally predatory in their habits. They generally speak a debased patois of the Dutch language, and seldom use any of the Hottentot dialects.

201. *Towns and Villages.*—The principal villages of the Griquas, which are also stations of the London missionary society, are Philippolis, about fifteen miles north of the Orange River, on the road from Colesberg to Bloemfontein, and is the residence of the chief Adam Kok; Campbellsdorp and Griqua Town are west of the Vaal River, and the seats of the chief Waterboer.

202. *Climate.*—The climate of the country inhabited by the Griquas is healthy and similar to that of the north-eastern division of the Cape colony and the Free State.

203. In concluding this notice of the Hottentot races, we must observe that so much has the original stem been corrupted by an intermixture of European, Negro, or Kafir blood, that the sheepskin-clad, entrail-adorned savages of Kolben and Sparrman must now be sought in the wastes of the Kalihari and in the rugged and inaccessible valleys of the sources of the Orange River. Year after year, the type of the original Hottentot is gradually assuming the semi-civilized state of the colonial Bastard or the independent Griqua; and it does not require much power of prescience to foretell that within the compass of a comparatively small space of time, the wild Bushman of South Africa will be reckoned in the same class as the Dodo, Dinormis, and other lately extinct families of the natural kingdom.



## CHAPTER XVI.—REGIONS INHABITED BY BETJOUANA TRIBES.

204. *Boundaries*.—Betjouanaland comprehends that portion of Central South Africa which lies between the Kalihari desert, on the west; the Boer Republics, on the east; its southern limits being Griqualand and the Cape colony; and on the north, the regions surrounding Lake Ngami and the valley of the Zambezi; the area of which may be roughly estimated at 200,000 square miles.

205. *Description of Surface*.—The eastern part of Betjouanaland may be considered as a rather rugged region, intersected with ranges of low hills, and draining itself into the Limpopo basin, while to the west it loses itself in the arid plains of the Kalihari desert; the water-shed line, separating the waters flowing into the Orange from those of the Limpopo and Zambezi, traverses Betjouanaland from north-west to south-east, and all the rivers south and west of it flow into the Orange River. To the north, the country lies almost at a dead level, at a height of about 2,500 feet above the sea, so that it is often difficult to determine in what direction many of the large anastomosing streams connected with Lake Ngami, the Chobe, and Lyambe or Zambezi, flow. To the north-east a high range of mountains, called Matoppo, divides the river systems of the Limpopo and Zambezi; and their northern slopes are occupied by the Amatabele Kafirs, under Moselekatse, who enslaved or drove away the Betjouana tribes originally inhabiting them.

206. *Rivers*.—In Betjouanaland the lines of water-shed between the Limpopo and Orange Rivers meet, and its various water-courses are all tributaries of these rivers. Many rivers of considerable size rise in the Cashan and Chouanye mountains, on the north side, and run into the Limpopo; such as the Mariqua, Ngotuane, Sirotume, &c. From the south side of the same range rise the Harte, Malapo, and other tributaries to the Orange River, which generally lose themselves in the sands of the southern Kalihari, and only flow after heavy rains. From the Matoppo mountains, other large periodical streams—the Shashi, Shashane—run south into the Limpopo; while the country north of these mountains are drained by many streams which run into the Zambezi. In the north-west, latitude  $21^{\circ}$  longitude  $26^{\circ}$  east, is found a considerable body of fresh water, called Lake

Ngami, out of which flows, sluggishly, a large stream, called the Zouga or D'Zuga, which, after a course of 250 miles, is finally lost in a chain of immense salt-pans or vleis, called Ntewe. Entering Lake Ngami at its north-western angle is another large stream, rising far to the north-west, called the Tonke or Teoge, while a large stream from the north, called the Tamunakle, joins the Zouga, a few miles east from Ngami, and is believed to connect its waters with those of the Chobe, a tributary to the Zambezi. But all these rivers are as yet wrapt in much obscurity, and it seems even that the very direction in which they flow depends, in some measure, on the local rains, far in the interior. But sufficient observations have been made to fully connect the system of Ngami with that of the Zambezi.

207. *Mountains.*—The mountains of Betjouanaland are offshoots of the Magaliesberg or Cashan range, running east and west, and dividing, as has been observed, the waters of the Orange and Vaal Rivers from those of the Limpopo. North of these mountains are various scattered groups of hills, fringing the east side of the Kalihari desert; and to the south are also several ranges of hills, running north and south, extending to the Orange River from north of Kuruman, called the Langeberg. North-east of the Limpopo is a high range of mountains, called Matoppo, from which flow, from north and south, several large streams, into the Zambezi and Limpopo Rivers. This part of the country is as yet but imperfectly known. The whole region to Lake Ngami and the Zambezi, towards the north-west, is one immense plain, in some places densely wooded.

208. *Lakes or Salt-pans.*—A distinguishing feature of the northern part of Betjouanaland are immense tracts of country which are sometimes, by heavy rains or inundations, converted into large lakes, but oftener exhibit the spectacle of dry vleis covered with an incrustation of salt. One, described by Mr. Chapman, is about 100 miles long and 30 wide; and Dr. Livingstone describes the Ntewe pans as 100 miles long and 10 or 12 wide. These large basins receive the drainage, in some cases, of a large extent of desert country; but the excessive evaporation keeps them nearly always dry.

209. *Population.*—The inhabitants of these regions nearly all speak the Sechuana language and its dialects, and are composed of several distinct tribes, under the rule of their several chiefs, besides numerous wandering Bakalihari, or

poor Betjouanas, equivalent to the Bushmen of Hottentot tribes. The Betjouanas are, comparatively, a timid race, and inferior to the Kafirs, in physical development. They may be divided into the following principal tribes: (1) Makololo, acknowledging Sekeletu as paramount chief, inhabiting the regions north of Lake Ngami, to  $15^{\circ}$  of south latitude. (2) Basutu, including the Batau, Baputi, Makolokue, &c., living to the south, in what is called Basutoland, &c., acknowledging the chief Moshesh as paramount. (See Basutoland.) (3) Different tribes, living in subjection to the emigrant boers, east of the Limpopo, as Butlou, Bapori, Bapo, Bapiri, &c. (4) The Bakalihari, or western branch, includes Bamangwato, under the chief Sechomi, and Bangwaketse, under Secheli, on the eastern edge of Kalihari; Batuana, under Lechetabele, near Lake Ngami; Bakuka, under Debebe, north-west of Lake Ngami, on the Tonke River; Batlapi, Bamatlaro, Bakaa, Bakalihari, &c. Of all these tribes, the best armed and most powerful are the Basutus, under their semi-civilized chief, Moshesh. There are, besides, living in Betjouanaland, various tribes of negro descent, called Makalaka, Bushmen of Hottentot origin, &c. No correct approximations to the number of inhabitants can be given. The Betjouanas are an ingenious people and possess more constructive ability than any other South African people. Their houses exhibit much ingenuity and convenience; they manufacture arms and ornaments in iron, copper, and wood; make neat skin mantles, &c.

210. *Mission Stations and Villages.*—The principal mission station and native town in the Betjouana country is Kuruman or New Lataku at a fine fountain, in a sheltered valley, latitude  $27^{\circ} 20'$  longitude  $24^{\circ} 10'$ , about 150 miles north of the colonial boundary and the residence of the chief of the Batlapi tribe. It was founded in 1816 by the London Missionary Society, and here labored the Rev. J. Campbell, and here labors still the patriarch Moffat. Kolobeng, another mission station, about 250 miles to the north-west, is the original station of Dr. Livingstone, and the residence of the chief Secheli. Linyanti, on the Chobe, is a large native town, and the residence of the chief Sekeletu. There are other mission stations at Mabotsa, Lekatlong, &c., generally supported by the London Society, who are now about forming a new station at Moselekatse's residence, north of the Matoppo mountains, in latitude  $19^{\circ} 40'$ .

211. *Productions.*—The chief productions of Betjouanaland are ivory, hides, riems and whips of sea-cow hide, wax, skin



mantles—called karosses, and cattle. These are collected by traders from the colony, who barter for them English goods.

212. *Zoology and Geology.*—All the larger animals are found in the remote parts of these regions in immense numbers, including elephants, rhinoceri, giraffes, sable antelopes, koodoos, &c. The prevalence of the poisonous fly, called “tsetse,” renders many parts totally impassable by cattle or horses. A vast field is still open for naturalists, in this part of South Africa. Of the geology, nothing very certain is known, but the whole of the region is supposed to form a continuation of Mr. Bain’s lacustrine system of the Cape colony.

213. *Climate.*—The climate of the region inhabited by the Betjouana tribes is thus described by Mr. Moffat: “The climate in the countries from the borders of the Cape colony to 25° north latitude and 24° east longitude, is very similar. The winds which prevail, especially in the higher regions, are from the west and north-west. Cold, withering winds frequently blow from the south during the winter months, in which rain rarely falls, and never with a south wind. In spring (the end of August), the northerly gales commence and blow daily with great violence from about 10 a.m. to sunset, when a still, serene night succeeds. During the prevalence of these winds, which continue till November, when the air becomes modified by thunderstorms, the atmosphere appears as if dense with smoke reaching as high as the clouds. This appearance is occasioned by the light particles of dust, brought from the sandy plains of the Kaligari desert, which is so exquisitely fine that it penetrates seams and cracks which are almost impervious to water. These winds may, with great propriety, be called sandy monsoons. They are so dry as to affect the skin very disagreeably, and the progress of exsiccation goes on rapidly, producing in the human frame extreme languor and febrile symptoms. Towards the latter end of the windy season, the thirsty cattle may frequently be seen turning their heads northward to sniff the aqueous blast, as their instinctive powers catch the scent of the green herbage which is brought from the tropical regions. The wind is rarely from the east; but when it is, we expect rain, which will sometimes continue for days, and is what we denominate land rains, being without thunder. The winds, I have learned from inquiry, come from within the tropics where rain has fallen, and the cool air thereby



produced rushes south, over the plains, filling up the space caused by the rarification of the air, owing to the approach of the sun to the tropic of Capricorn. The more boisterous these winds are, the more reason we have to expect rain. They cannot extend to a very great height, as the thunderstorms which follow, and which often commence with a small cloud in the opposite direction, increasing into mountains of snow, with a yellow tinge, pursue an opposite course. These are preceded by a dead stillness, which continues till the tornado bursts upon us with awful violence and the clouds have discharged their watery treasures. The higher mountains, like masses with their edges exactly defined, go in one direction, while the feelers or loose misty vapor beneath, convulsed and rolling in fearful velocity, are going in another, and the peals of thunder are such as to make the very earth tremble." Serumairi, or thunder without clouds, is often heard in this region. Dr. Livingstone says, "The whole of the country adjacent to the desert, from Kuruman to Kolobeng, and beyond, as far as the latitude of Lake Ngami, is remarkable for its great salubrity of climate. Not only the natives, but Europeans whose constitutions have been impaired by an Indian climate, find the tract of country indicated both healthy and restorative; and, were it not for the great expense of such a trip, I should have no hesitation in recommending the borders of the Kalihari desert as admirably suited for all patients having pulmonary complaints." Towards and beyond Lake Ngami, however, and advancing into the tropic, as water becomes more abundant, fever and ague are, in certain seasons of the year, very prevalent. Except where modified by mountain ranges and other local causes, the above description is applicable to all parts of Central South Africa south of the tropic of Capricorn and north of the great mountain range.

#### CHAPTER XVII.—BASUTULAND.

214. The term Basutoland is now generally applied to a small but remarkable portion of South Africa, inhabited by a powerful tribe of Betjouanas, called Abasutus, under the paramount chief Moshesh, and occupying a difficult, and in many places almost inaccessible, mountain region, where the head waters rise that form the Caledon, Vaal, and Orange Rivers, which run, under the name of Gariep or

Orange, into the Atlantic Ocean; and the Umzimvobo, Umzimculu, and Utugela, draining Natal and Kafirland, into the Indian Ocean.

215. *Boundaries*.—This region is surrounded on the west and north by the Orange Free State, while on the south-east an immense double chain of lofty mountains, called the Maluti, divides it from Kafirland Proper and Natal. It comprises an area of about 15,000 square miles.

216. *Surface*.—The high plains of the Sovereignty, as they approach the mountains, become broken by numerous flat-topped basaltic hills. After crossing the Caledon River, these hills again change gradually into high elevated plains or terraces, from which rise the serrated summits of the Maluti or Blue Mountains, an elevated range which divides the valley of the Caledon River from that of the Orange. The Orange River valley, in its upper part, is a frightful ravine, almost inaccessible, and is bounded on its opposite side by the Quathlamba mountains, which separate it from Kafirland and Natal, or the coast region. As yet, no practicable pass has been discovered across this range to shorten the distance between the Cape colony and the Free State and Natal. The culminating point of these mountains is called by the French missionaries Mont aux Sources, and is probably 10,000 feet above the sea, presenting a precipitous face towards the coast.

217. *Rivers*.—The Caledon and Orange Rivers, as well as those of the Wilge and other tributaries of the Vaal River, rise in the Mont aux Sources, and their upper valleys are included in Basutuland. After a course of about 250 miles they meet and form the Nu Gariep, which, after a further course of 250 miles, is joined by the Vaal, forming the Ky Gariep, or Great Orange River, to the ocean. After the melting of the snow or the summer thunderstorms, these rivers are swollen into streams of considerable volume. They are not, however, navigable, except for short distances.

218. *Mountains*.—The mountains of Basutuland are all belonging to the great Quathlamba chain, which forms the natural boundary between the coast region and the interior of South Africa. A range running nearly at right angles with the Mont aux Sources, called the Wittebergen, separates the northern part of Basutuland from the district of Harrismith, in the Free State.

219. *Population*.—Basutuland is rather densely populated by the remains of various Betjouana tribes, known under the general name of Abasutus, who, during the devastating wars

of Chaka, Dingaan, and Moselekatze, took refuge in the mountain fastnesses, and between 1824–30 began to rally round Moshesh, a native chief of great energy and force of character. Mixed up with these Basutus are also remains of tribes of refugee Zulu Kafirs, Korrannas, Bushmen, &c.; and up to this day Moshesh has succeeded in preserving his independence, and making himself feared and respected by his troublesome neighbors of the Free State. The war lately carried on between Moshesh and the Boers has fortunately terminated, both parties agreeing to submit their quarrel to the judgment of His Excellency Sir G. Grey, and a new boundary line to the west agreed upon.

220. *Mission Stations and Villages.*—Numerous mission stations have been established by the Paris and Wesleyan Mission Societies in this region, and the missionaries have proved of immense service to Moshesh, in enabling him to advance in the knowledge and practice of civilization. The principal French stations are Beersheba, Thaba Moriah, Hebron, and Bethesda. Many of these suffered considerably during the late war. The chief Wesleyan mission stations are Umpekani, Umperani, and Thaba Unchu. Moshesh's chief village is called Thaba Bossiou, and is situated at the summit of a high, flat-topped hill, near the sources of the Little Caledon River. Thaba Unchu, near the boundary of the Free State, is also a large native town. Large native villages are generally found in the neighborhood of the different mission stations.

221. *Geology.*—The geological features of the country resemble those of the Quathlamba range and the Free State. No minerals have been found in any quantity. Agates abound in the upper waters of the Caledon and Orange Rivers.

#### CHAPTER XVIII.—DAMARA AND OVAMPOLAND, OR OTJIHERERO.

222. *Description of Inhabitants.*—North of Great Namaqualand and extending along the coast of the Atlantic as far as the Cuanene River, in about 17° south latitude, lie the regions inhabited by tribes called Damaras and Ovamos, speaking a language called Otjiherero; although remotely belonging to, yet not understood by, the Betjouana races. These tribes appear to form a connecting link between the Negro nations of Loando and Benguela and the Betjouana and Kafir races of South Africa. There is also found in this region a tribe somewhat resembling



the Bakalihari, or poor Betjouanas, being a Negro race speaking the Namaqua language. This tribe, like the Bushmen, are of predatory habits, and live in the most mountainous and inaccessible parts of the country. They are sometimes called Berg or Mountain Damaras, to distinguish them from the more civilized Damaras of the plains, or Cattle Damaras.

223. *Description of Country.*—Damara and Ovampoland, or the land of the Otjiherero, present a belt of sandy country between the coast and the high inhabited table lands. Ovampoland is separated from Damaraland by a broad belt of country covered with dense thorny thickets of acacias and camel-thorns. The northern boundary is the Cuanene River, which separates it from the Portuguese territory; to the east the country loses itself in the desert. There are no navigable rivers, and few anchorages along the coast north of Walwich Bay, in latitude  $22^{\circ} 40'$ . Damaraland is easily reached from Walwich Bay. It was first visited by Sir J. Alexander, in 1838, who reached it overland from the colony, and Ovampoland by Messrs. Galton and Anderson, in 1850. The principal rivers are the Swakop, Kusip, and their branches. The height of the table land near their sources is about 6,000 feet, from whence the country slopes gently to the east, towards Lake Ngami and the Kalihari desert; many of the peaks of the mountain region reach a height of 8,000 feet above the sea. Of the coast region north of Walwich Bay very little is known. The crossing of South Africa, from east to west, through this region, was first performed by Messrs. Chapman and Edwards, in 1851-4, from Natal to Walwich Bay. C. J. Andersson was the first European traveler who reached Lake Ngami from the west coast, where he met Messrs. Green, Chapman, and other explorers, who had reached it in an opposite direction. The country north-east of Ovampoland abounds in elephants, rhinoceri, and giraffes.

224. *Mission Stations.*—Several German mission stations have been for some years established at Otjimbingue, Barmen, and Schmelen's Hope; but the repeated attacks of the predatory Namaqua tribes, under Jonker Afrikander and other chiefs, have, for some years back, involved all Damaraland in distress and confusion.

225. *Climate.*—The table land of Ovampoland and Damaraland lying high, the climate is very healthy and even cold in winter. Near the coast, low fever is common. It seldom rains in the coast region, which is a very desolate one and nearly destitute of water.



226. *Productions.*—Copper ore abounds in Damaraland, and some mines are now working there. Cattle, ivory, and hides are the principal other productions. Large numbers of horned cattle annually reach the Cape colony from these regions.

227. *Natural History.*—All the large game are found in these regions, which are distinguished by immense forests of the larger acacias and camel-thorns. Whales abound on the coast.

228. *Population.*—The Ovampo tribes are described by Andersson as of a very dark complexion, tall and robust, but remarkably ugly, and scantily attired; their looks betoken independence and determination; they have no idea of using oxen or beasts of burthen, but carry, themselves, heavy loads. Their paramount chief, Nangoro, has lately evinced decided symptoms of hostility to Europeans visiting his region. They are described, however, as honest, industrious, and hospitable; they carefully tend the old and infirm, in contradistinction to many other South African tribes. The Ovampo tribes are not entirely pastoral, but cultivate much corn. The Damaras are a stout, athletic people, very dirty in their habits; they are generally armed with the bow and arrow. They are a pastoral people, and have no notions of permanent habitations; they live in a constant state of warfare with the Hill Damaras or Ghoudamoup, on the one hand, and the Great Namaqua or Bastard Hottentots, on the other. The Hill Damaras are supposed to be a Negro tribe, who have adopted the old Hottentot language; they live in the inaccessible hills of the southern parts of Damaraland, and are a pastoral and predatory people.

#### CHAPTER XIX.—KALIHARI DESERT AND CENTRAL REGIONS NORTH-WEST OF LAKE NGAMI.

229. All the regions on the east and west of South Africa have now been described; but there is yet a vast central and nearly uninhabited tract, lying between Betjouanaland on the east, and Great Namaqualand and Damaraland on the west, and having the Orange River for its southern boundary, which has before been alluded to as the Kalihari desert, but which is worthy of a closer description.

230. This desert may be deemed the continuation, north of the Orange River, of the sterile region called Bushmanland,

which extends south of the Orange River to the Hantam and Kareebergen. It is a nearly waterless, sandy, but in many places well wooded, tract, intersected by dry water-courses; Livingstone describes it as remarkable for little water and considerable vegetation, and therefore very different from the karroos of the colony, which have neither water nor vegetation, unless after heavy rains.

231. The probable reason of so little rain falling in this region is, that the prevailing wind of most of the interior of South Africa is easterly, with a little southerly. The moisture taken up by the atmosphere from the Indian Ocean is deposited on the hilly slopes of the coast mountain ranges, and when the moving mass of air reaches the verge of the great heated plains of the interior, the ascending heat gives it a greater capacity for retaining all its remaining humidity, and few showers can be given to the middle and western lands, in consequence of the increased hygrometric power; in the same manner as the heat of Table Valley, acting on the south-east wind falling over the edges of the mountain, renders our summer season nearly rainless, unless the wind blows from the west.

232. No mountains or elevations of any considerable height are found in the Kalihari, the general level of which may be 3,000 feet above the sea; but many low ranges of hills are found. The soil is generally a light sand, resting on a bed of calcareous tufa, in which are found springs, which the wandering natives generally carefully conceal.

233. *Rivers.*—The desert is drained, to the south, by the channels of the Nosap, Maloppo, and other branches of the Orange River. On the east side, the drainage flows into the Limpopo. The river beds are generally waterless and distinguished by groves of mimosa thorn on their banks.

234. *Vegetable Productions.*—The Kalihari abounds in grass and various tuberous-rooted creepers, but the most useful production is the “kengwe,” or wild water-melon. Animals of every sort and name feed on it,—even lions, hyenas, and jackals. They are of two kinds, sweet and bitter; and without them, this desert would, in many places, be impassable, as these melons are full of a rich and refreshing juice. Andersson, in the northern parts, found immense forests of thorn trees.

235. *Population.*—The population consists of a few wandering Bushmen and Bakalihari. The former live in the desert, by

choice, the latter by compulsion. The former never cultivate the soil, or rear any animals, except some miserable dogs; the latter cultivate gardens where they can, and rear small herds of goats, and obtain supplies of tobacco, &c, by the manufacture of karosses from the skins of the smaller animals which here abound. They generally keep the fountains concealed, and have so-called "sucking places" in many parts of the desert, from which water is drawn by a reed. In many of the intestine wars of South Africa, the Betjouana tribes have had to take refuge in this desert, which has often proved a grave to their pursuers.

236. *Climate*.—The climate is nearly similar to Betjouanaland and perfectly healthy; but it very seldom rains.

237. *Zoology*.—The elephant, giraffe, and rhinoceros is found in the northern parts, after heavy rains. Millions of springboks issue periodically from the Kalihari to the grassy plains of the Free State and Cape colony. Small rodentia and jackals abound, from whose skins the karosses manufactured by the natives are generally made.

238. *Roads*.—The desert has been crossed from west to east by C. J. Andersson, and Griqua traders sometimes pass from Griqua Town to Damaraland. Of the central parts little is known. In 1852, Messrs Shelley and Orpen attempted to penetrate to the westward from Kuruman; and after making a large circuit had, eventually, to return, from want of water. In 1856, R. Moffat traveled along its southern edge, on his return from Little Namaqualand to Kuruman.

#### CHAPTER XX.—CONCLUDING REMARKS.

239. A brief and comprehensive description of all that is considered absolutely necessary to give young readers a comprehensive view of the southern extremity of the Great African pyramid, and its political and ethnological divisions, has now been given, in as plain and simple a manner as possible. Dr. Livingstone, however, has given in a very few words, in his missionary travels, a very happy, general view of the regions, which is here presented, a little enlarged upon. "Our route (from Cape Town) to the north lay near the centre of the cone-shaped mass of land which constitutes the promontory of the Cape. (This may be misunderstood, as the Cape promontory is only a secondary feature: it would be better expressed, the extremity of the

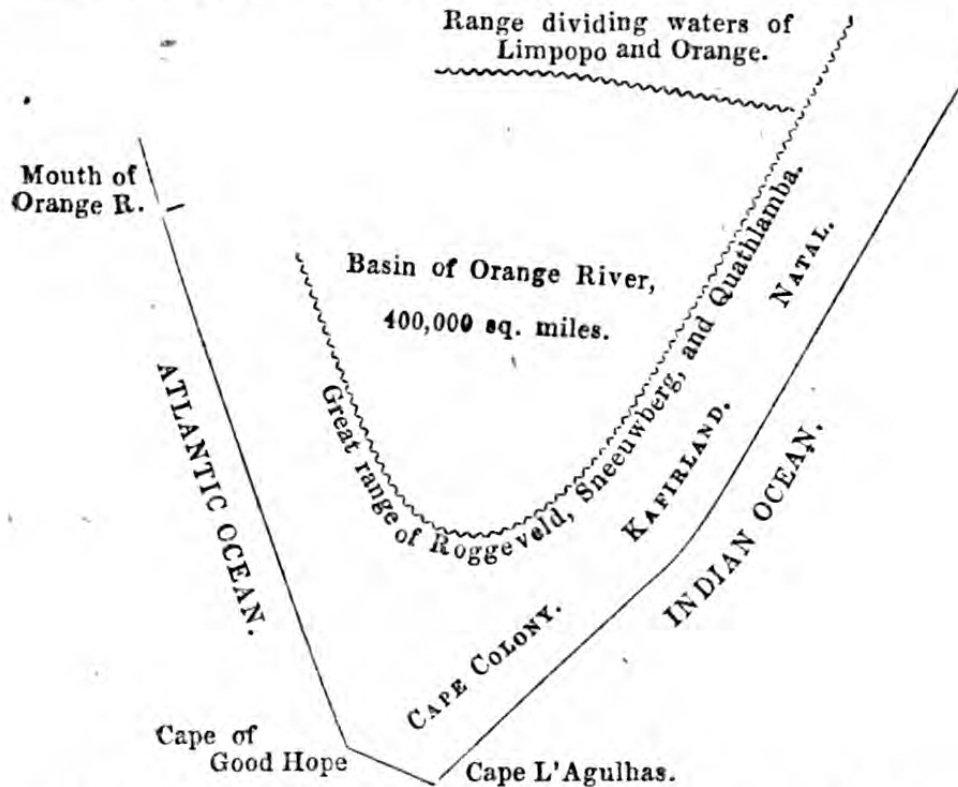


African continent.) If we suppose this cone to be divided into three zones or longitudinal bands, we find each presenting distinct peculiarities of climate, physical appearance, and population. These are more marked beyond than within the colony. At some points, one district seems to be continued in and to merge into the other, but the general dissimilarity warrants the divisions, as an aid to memory. The eastern zone is often furnished with mountains, well wooded with evergreen succulent trees, on which neither fire nor droughts can have the smallest effect (*strelitzia*, *zamia horrida*, *portucalacea afra*, *euphorbias*, and *aloes arborescens*), and its sea-board gorges are clad with gigantic timbers. It is also comparatively well watered with streams and flowing rivers. The annual supply of rain is considerable, and the inhabitants, Kafirs and Zulus, are tall, muscular, and well made; they are shrewd, energetic, and brave; altogether, they merit the character given them by military authorities, of being magnificent savages. Their splendid physical development and form of skull show that but for the black skin and woolly hair, they would rank among the foremost Europeans. The next division, that which embraces the center of the continent, can scarcely be called hilly, for what hills there are are low; it consists, for the most part, of slightly undulating plains. There are no lofty mountains (for the plains they rise from are elevated), and still fewer flowing streams. Rain is far from abundant, and droughts may be expected every few years. Without artificial irrigation, no European grain can be raised, and the inhabitants (Betjouanas), though evidently of the same stock, originally, with those already mentioned, and closely resembling them in being an agricultural as well as a pastoral people, are a comparatively timid race, and inferior to the Kafirs in physical development. The western division is still more level than the middle one, being rugged only near the coast. It includes the great plain called the Kalihari desert, which is remarkable for little water and considerable vegetation."

240. The above is an extract from the fifth chapter of Dr. Livingstone's work, which gives, in a few words, a comprehensive description of the physical geography of South Africa. The vast truncated pyramid, with the high mountain ridges running along its eastern side, and the plains of the Sovereignty and the Kalihari sloping down to the western coast, while the eastern face presents the luxuriant forests and pastures of Kafirland, Natal, and Zululand, a striking contrast to the



bare plains of the Free State, the vast flats of Bushmanland, and the waterless expanse of the Kalihari. On the east is a region of only a few miles wide, intersected by the streams from the same mountains, whose waters, on the other side, are diffused over a region of thousands of square miles. Here is presented a rough diagram which will explain the formation better than pages of mere description :



241. In conclusion of this part, it may be observed that, besides the different divisions of the Cape colony, there are certain localities in it to which general names are given from certain peculiarities in the soil, climate, or situation, and quite independent of the political division of it. These names the student should bear in mind, as they help to give a much better idea of the country than the mere names of the divisions can do. Thus, beginning in Namaqualand, the desert region eastward of it, included in the division of Calvinia, is called Bushmanland; and the granitic region, between Kamiesberg and the Olifant's River, called the Hardeveld, in distinction to the soft and sandy Zandveld south of it; part of the Malmesbury district, from its dark and heathy plains, is called Zwartland; and the Twenty-four Rivers give name to a certain well-watered tract east of the Berg River. The Hantam, Onder, Achter, and Midden

Roggevelds, or Rye Country, describe large mountain ranges lying above the Bokkeveld karroo, to the east of it; while the Cold Bokkeveld is an Alpine region, to the west of it. Warm Bokkeveld is a lower and warmer region. The Goudine and Bosjesveld are the upper parts of the Breede River Valley. In Caledon, is found along the coast, the Zandveld and the Ruggens, a low hilly country; in Swellendam, the Grasveld and Kannaland, or the Little Karroo; in George, Outeniqualand, Droogeveld, Kammanassie, Cango, and Langekloof, occur; in Albany and Uitenhage is the Zuurveld, along the coast, and Commadagga, north of the Zuurberg, and the Zwarteruggens; in Graaff-Reinet is the Camdebo, at the foot of the mountains, and the Winterveld, Uitvlugt, and Koudeveld, on their tops; in Beaufort, is the Gouph, in the Karroo, and the Nieweveld, on the other side of the mountains; Colesberg has Wintervelds, and Middenvelds, and Achtervelds; Albert has Hantam and Waschbank; Somerset has Zwagershoek and Bruintjeshoghte. The term "veld" is particularly characteristic of these extents of country; thus, "trekfeld" is generally understood as a country to which the boers migrate, with their flocks and herds, at certain seasons; "Winterveld," a cold country; "Zuurveld," a sour grass country; "Zoetveld," a sweet grass; "Zandveld," a sandy; "Grasveld," a grassy; and "Hardeveld," a hard or stony country; "Roggeveld" is a country fit for the cultivation of rye; and "Bokkeveld," a country inhabited by springboks—suitable for the rearing of goats. Considerable confusion arises by the constant introduction of these names in the different works connected with the Cape colony; and the student should study the map well, to be enabled to distinguish the various Hantams, Roggevelds, &c.,—names given by the farmers to particular tracts of country, from the political divisions, named by the colonial government, such as George, Swellendam, &c. A similar nomenclature, it may be observed, prevails in other countries peopled by races of Teutonic origin. Thus we have, in Scotland, Badenoch, Lochaber, Gowrie, Annandale, Teviotdale, Bredalbane, Strathmore, Kantire, &c., large tracts of country quite independent of the political divisions of Scotch counties; and in Germany, we have Westphalia, Franconia, the Harz, Zwartewald, &c., the names derived from the primeval circumstances of the regions so named.

242. Young men who would wish to pursue further the study of the physical, natural, and political history of South

Africa, may consult the following authors, commencing with the earliest Cape Records, collected by Moodie; Kolben's description; Sparrman; Le Vaillant; Thunberg; Paterson; Lichtenstein; Barrow; Latrobe; Burchill; Campbell; Harris; Alexander; Gardiner; Pringle; Steedman; Backhouse; Arbousset; B. Shaw; Moffat; Kay; Galton; Andersson; Livingstone: and in the early collection of voyages and travels there are many relating to these regions. There are also many valuable notices of South Africa scattered through the various missionary records and parliamentary blue-books, published from time to time; and in the different local periodicals and newspapers. The principal writers on scientific subjects connected with South Africa are Dr. A. Smith, on its natural history; Lacaille and Maclear, on its geodesy and astronomy; and Messrs. Bain, Atherstone, and Wyley, on the geology. Messrs. Borchers and Watermeyer have contributed many valuable essays on the early history of the Cape colony; Messrs. Godlonton and Boyce and Rev. W. Shaw have chronicled the early history of the eastern frontier and its Kafir wars; while Messrs. Robert Moffat, jun., C. Chase, C. Bell (the present Surveyor-General), A. Wyley, Dr. Atherstone, Mr. Bain, and the author of the present little work, have worked in the field of geographical improvement.

**NOTE.**—While this work is going through the press, we believe that Mr. de Lima, a Hollander of considerable literary attainments, has made a collection of nearly all the writers on the subject of South Africa, which he intends shortly to publish. His Excellency Sir G. Grey has also made a very complete collection of all works relating to the philology of the South African languages. The Public Library, Cape Town, is painfully defective in works relating to South Africa.

## PART III.

### SKETCH OF THE PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF SOUTH AFRICA.

---

#### CHAPTER I.—GENERAL OUTLINE OF THE SUBJECT.

243. Having, already, in describing the political and ethnological divisions of South Africa, given brief descriptions of the physical features of the country, it is the intention, in this part, to recapitulate these scattered notices, and endeavor to impress on the more advanced students of the subject a correct view of the surface of the southern part of the continent of Africa: (1) As relates to the external crust of the earth's surface in that part of the globe. (2) The atmospheric peculiarities. (3) The form and distribution of animal and vegetable life,—forming a subject, the importance of which is becoming, in modern times, more and more recognized; and which rudely sketched out in the pages of Buffon, has approached nearly to perfection in the more elaborate works of Humboldt, Berghaus, Johnstone, and Somerville.

244. To give, however, such a subject any degree of detail or accuracy, data are required, and it must be regretted that, in South Africa, such have not been collected in sufficient quantity to enter very fully on the subject. Many valuable pioneers to science, however, have labored in the field, and the names of Maclear, Livingstone, Burchill, Barrow, Bain, Atherstone, Rubidge, Andersson, &c., are guarantees for whatever facts exist for the elucidation of its physical geography.

245. Physical geography is the history of the earth in its whole material organization; as a mass of matter whose external crust exists in various mechanical conditions, acting



on and affecting each other, as the seat of organic life, both vegetable and animal, and as subject to various changes, modifying both conditions of organic existence. It deals not with artificial boundaries of nations, or with the position and relative importance of those localities where men congregate in multitudes. Thus, in giving a sketch of the physical geography of South Africa, where the basin of the Orange River is described, it is without any reference to the Dutch boers living on its southern borders, the miserable Bushmen and Korannas wandering along its banks, or the predatory Namaquas living in the country north of it; the Great Karroo is described without considering the divisions of Beaufort and Worcester, in which it is politically included; the sloping plains of the head waters of the Orange River and the rocky valleys of the Maluti are separated from any interest that may be felt in the political affairs of the Free State or the astute councils of the sage Moshesh.

246. No student can command a perfect and full idea of the geography, or earth description, as our Teutonic brethren more simply call it, of any country until he divests his mind, in a certain degree, of the political divisions necessary, perhaps, in the present day, for the general study of the subject, and revert to the earth's features, imprinted on its surface by the hand of the Creator. Looking on the subject with the new light thus afforded, the student of physical geography must, for the present, putting out of the question historical recollections, consider Holland as the delta or mud deposit at the mouth of the Rhine; and Switzerland, the group of Alpine valleys round the water-shed, from which flow the rivers of Germany, France, and Italy. The physical geographer ignores the political boundaries which surround the German kingdoms and principalities of Saxony, Bohemia, Prussia, Bavaria, and Baden, and only regards the basins of the Danube and Elbe, and the water-sheds which form the mountain regions of the Tyrol, the Erzgebirge, and the Hartz mountains; Poland, to him, is not remembered as the battle-field of a brave nation fighting for its liberties, but as the vast plain sloping to the north, which forms the surface of Central Europe, from the Carpathian and Bohemian mountains to the Baltic. Physical geography has not the historical charms of political geography. It has, however, its own peculiar attractions; and all students will allow, when they begin to take a large and comprehensive view of the subject, that it expands and strengthens the intellect, and

makes clear many doubtful and obscure points in history, which political geography will not do. Thus, in the exclamation of Louis the Fourteenth, when his grandson was appointed heir to the Spanish monarchy—"The Pyrenees exist no longer," a physical geographer will at once recognize, in the existence of a lofty and rugged range of mountains, across a comparatively narrow isthmus or connecting piece of land, a barrier which has hitherto, and probably will for ever, constitute the French and Spanish as totally separate and distinct nations, in the same manner as the Alps form a physical barrier between the phlegmatic Teutonic and excitable Latin races.

247. The influence of mountains in separating races prevails in a much more striking manner in the old world, however, than in the new. In Europe, the Scotch Highlanders, the Welsh, Basques, the Swiss, and Tyrolese have, to the present day, preserved a distinct and separate nationality from the lowland populations surrounding them. In the lofty Alpine regions of Asia, the warlike Afghan, the Circassian, and Koord preserve, in the valleys of the Himalaya, the Caucasus, and rugged mountains of Armenia, their liberties and national independence. And even in Southern Africa the great coast range of mountains forms the line of demarcation between the Betjouana and Kafir tribes; and it appears as if the final struggle for supremacy between the black and white races would eventually take place in the lofty Alpine valleys of the Maluti and Quathlamba mountains. In the new world, at the present day, the existence of some of the most extensive and lofty mountains on the surface of the globe has not so much modified the relations of the human race. The elevated valleys of the highlands of Mexico are inhabited by degenerate Spaniards and tribes of mongrel Indian races, and the native population of the elevated plateaux of the South American Andes are in no way superior to the dwellers in the plains, either in love of independence, intelligence, or activity.

#### CHAPTER II.—ON THE FORM, DISTRIBUTION, AND NATURAL PHENOMENA OF THE LAND OF SOUTH AFRICA.

248. The physical features of the region forming the southern extremity of the continent of Africa, shaped, as it has been described in Part I, like a vast truncated pyramid or triangle, with its apex towards the south, may be

most clearly comprehended by describing the river systems which drain it and the mountain ranges forming the ridges or water-shed lines from which those rivers descend. Thus considered, it will be found that South Africa, from its southern extremity, Cape L'Agulhas, latitude  $34^{\circ} 49'$ , longitude  $20^{\circ} 0' 40''$  east, to the mouths of the Zambezi, is divided into the following natural systems:—(1) The coast region, drained, generally, by rivers of short course, and separated from the interior by a mountain range nearly continuous from Ovampoland, round the Cape colony, to the north of Delagoa Bay, as far as is known; the different river basins, separated by subsidiary ranges of mountains and highlands, which must be considered offshoots of the primary range. (2) The great basin of the Orange or Gariiep River, draining the northern and western sides of the coast range of mountains and the immense tract of desert country north, nearly to Lake Ngami, Betjouanaland, and the southern slopes of the Magaliesbergen, an extent of nearly 400,000 square miles. (3) The river system of the Limpopo or Ouri, draining the northern face of the Magaliesbergen, the eastern parts of the Kalihari desert, and the southern slopes of the Malappo mountains, which separates the basin from that of the Zambezi. The embouchure of this basin on the coast is not accurately known. (4) The great river system of the Zambezi, the southern slope of which alone can be included in this description, as the northern portion of its basin extends north as far as  $8^{\circ}$  of south latitude. (5) The Cuanene basin, which drains the northern edge of Ovampoland and the Kalihari desert. This region is as yet but little known, but its exploration has been undertaken by the traveler C. J. Andersson.

249. *Mountain Ranges.*—It is probable that the mountain ranges of South Africa are connected in some degree, both on the eastern and western coast, with those high lands which fringe the coast of Africa, from Abyssinia to the basin of the Niger. A study of the systems which have been described will much facilitate acquiring a correct knowledge of the mountains and water-shed lines.\* In Damara and Ovampoland is found, at an average distance of 120 to 150 miles from the coast, and in many places much nearer to it, a broad band of high table land, studded with rugged and apparently unconnected peaks and barren hills, between which and the sea lie extensive barren, sandy plains, and from which issue,

\* In all descriptions of mountains and rivers, we generally commence on the west, or left hand, and travel round South Africa to the right.



to the north and east, sluggish periodical streams, which either are wholly evaporated in their course or eventually find their way into the Cuanene or the dry water-courses of the Kalihari. This barren and rugged belt of mountains loses itself to the north, as far as is known, in the high and fertile plains of Ovampoland; on the east they sink into the elevated plateau of the Kalihari desert; while to the south they continue down to the bed of the Orange River, on each side of the valley of the Oup or Borradaile River, and south of it, forming the rugged belt of the mountains of Little Namaqualand and the Kamiesbergen, where the high terrace of Bushmanland, seemingly a perfect flat, although upwards of 3,000 feet above the sea, eventually connects these mountains with the Hantam, Roggeveld, Nieuweveld, Sneeuwberg, Zuurberg, Stormberg, &c., of the Cape colony, and so north-east to the Quathlamba and Drakensberg of Natal, although their geological formation is very different; the Maluti, of Basutoland, and the Magaliesbergen, are offshoots, at nearly right angles to the main range, the latter dividing the river system of the Orange from that of the Limpopo River; and it is very probable that the same mountain range, more or less interrupted, eventually joins the Alpine region of Abyssinia, in the same way as the Balkan and Pyrenees can be traced as continuations of the Swiss Alps, and the Rocky Mountains of North America identified with the same mountain system as the volcanic peaks of Tierra del Fuego. The general character of the mountains of Damaraland, south, as far as the Kamiesbergen, is granitic, and from the Hantam to Natal, sandstones of more recent formation.

250. The mountain ranges already mentioned have been sometimes called the back-bone of Africa, and should be always kept in view as forming the most distinctive physical feature of the country. The average height of their summits varies from 5,000 to 10,000 feet, and two or three culminating knots or groups of high lands occur, from which radiate subsidiary ranges, enclosing various upland plateaux and valleys. In the Sneeuwbergen, the lofty peak of the Compassberg forms such a point, sending, to the north-east, the ranges of the Rhenosterberg, Bamboesberg, Stormberg, and Quathlamba, and to the south-east the Zwagershoek mountains, Great Winterberg, Amatola, and Matuana mountains. Again, on the north-west angle of the Natal colony, another point of great elevation is found in the Mont aux Sources, from which ramifies the Maluti mountains and the Wittebergen; further



to the north, again, near the heads of the Likwa or Vaal River, occurs a large elevated plateau, from which ramifies, running nearly east and west, the ranges of the Magaliesberg, Chouanye, and other parallel ranges, forming the water-shed between the Orange and Limpopo river systems. Running parallel to the mountain chain, already described, and more especially in the Cape colony and to the north-east of it, are many subsidiary ranges, forming, as it were, retaining walls or buttresses to the elevated terraces or plateaux, which rise in regular steps from the coast to the interior. These secondary chains of mountains, ranging from 4,000 to 6,000 feet in height, may be considered as commencing south of Olifant's River,\* and run from thence round the coast, terminating between St. Frances' Bay and the mouth of the Great Fish River, where they gradually sink down to the sea level. The distance from the coast of the range nearest to it varies from seven to forty miles; these ranges enclose the elevated plateaux of the Great Karroo, the Cold Bokkeveld, Warm Bokkeveld, Kannaland or Little Karroo, Olifant's River Valleys, west and east, Langekloof, &c., varying in elevation from 1,000 to 3,000 feet above the coast regions. North of the great mountain range first described, immense elevated plains, covered with groups of hills, sometimes isolated and sometimes connected, slope down to the basin of the Orange River, forming the plains of the Free State, the Nieuweveld, Bushmanland, &c.; and in the coast region groups of hills often occur, standing in advance, as it were, of the main range, such as the Piketberg, Riebeek's Kasteel, the Paarl and Cape promontory mountains. The general features of the mountains of South Africa are varied in their outline, and present a scarped and precipitous face to the coast, sloping more gently to the interior; for instance, Table Mountain, the Roggeveld mountains, &c. In many places, such as the Olifant's River mountains, the Quathlamba, the Outeniqua mountains, and when the summits are composed of sandstones, more or less recent and friable on exposure, the outline is picturesque and varied in the extreme. The tabular form is also very prevalent in many of the sandstone ranges, often capped with igneous rocks; but in the granite region, north of the Olifant's River, west, and extending into Great Namaqualand, the gneiss and granite rocks present bare and rather rounded summits. In the immediate neighborhood of the Orange River Valley, near the termination of its course, the hills appear of the most fantastic shape, and as if subjected to

violent igneous action. North of the Nieuweveld mountains, a secondary range, called the Karreeberg, almost entirely composed of flat-topped hills, runs east to west for many miles, until lost in the hills on the southern side of Bushmanland. As a general remark, the coast side of all these ranges is always the best wooded. (For the height of the principal points in the mountain ranges which have been accurately fixed, *vide* Appendix.) None of the mountains of South Africa, however, reach the limit of perpetual snow, which is one cause of the periodical nature of the rivers rising on their sides.

#### CHAPTER III.—ELEVATED PLAINS, DESERTS, KARROOS, ETC.

251. The principal deserts and karroos of South Africa have already been briefly noticed in Part I; but it is necessary here, again, to say a few words on these physical features, which give a distinguishing stamp to this part of the earth's surface. The deserts of South Africa are not—like the Saharas of the northern portion of the continent—sandy wastes, shifting their surface under the breath of every gust of wind, or cold, inhospitable plains, like the Gobi, of Central Asia; on the contrary, they are generally composed of shallow beds of the richest soil, which only wants the fertilizing power of water to render them as rich as any other part of the surface. Lichtenstein and Pringle describe, in elegant terms, the beauty of the Great Karroo after the vivifying effect of a few thunderstorms. The Kalihari, bare of water as it is, is in many places covered with a most luxuriant vegetation; and Bushmanland, after the periodical rains, presents the appearance of a vast waving field of hay; but owing to the formation of the surface, the scanty rains that fall soon run off, and the summer sun quickly reduces it to its primitive burnt and barren appearance. Dr. Livingstone's theory of the South African deserts is, that they once formed the beds of immense lakes, of which the fast diminishing Lake Ngami now presents the only remains. The whole of these waters, it is supposed, were let off by fissures or cracks made in the subtending slopes by the upheaval of the country. The fissures thus made at the Victoria Falls let out the waters of the great central valley of the Zambezi. The fissure through which the Orange River pours itself, at the falls of Aukrabies, probably drained off the

waters of the Kalihari desert and the table lands of Bushmanland. The Warm Bokkeveld Valley and Kannaland were probably lakes at one period, the one drained through Michell's Pass, the other by the valley of the Gauritz, and probably the Great Karroo and Olifant's River Valley, also; and, indeed, the rugged and fearful valleys through which the waters of the Orange, the Gauritz, and other rivers reach the sea, show the evident traces of some violent convulsions of nature. The basins of Cradock and Queen's Town appear as if formerly beds of old lakes, now drained by the water-courses of the Great Fish and Kei Rivers. A proof of the elevation of the land, at a comparatively recent geological period, is seen in the beds of shells, many of them of existing species, found along the coast, at heights varying from fifty to five hundred feet, embedded in a muddy tufa.

252. The soil of the Kalihari is generally a light-colored, soft, and pure sand, resting on a bed of a tufaceous conglomerate, probably on a substratum of granite or gneiss,—in the western part, at least. The many dry river-courses that intersect it contain much alluvial soil, baked hard by the burning sun, rain-water standing for months in pools formed in their channels. Towards the east, the sandstone formations, capped with trap rocks, appear; and to the north the country seems to be an alluvial deposit or bed of an ancient lake.

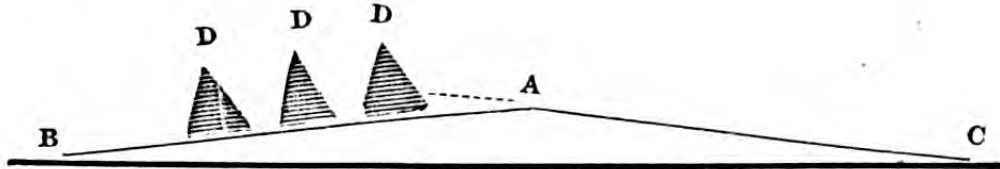
253. The substratum of the Great Karroo is a blue shaly rock, composing part of Mr. Bain's *dicynodon strata*, covered with thin beds of red argillaceous soil; both rock and clay appear to contain much soluble saline matter, which causes the general brackish nature of both the springs and rivers found in the Karroo.

#### CHAPTER IV.—EXPLANATION OF WATER-SHED LINE—WATER-SHED LINE OF SOUTH AFRICA.

254. Before entering further into any detailed description of the physical geography of South Africa, the student should acquire a correct idea of the line of division which separates the waters running into the Atlantic from those falling into the Indian Ocean, commonly called the water-shed line, of which the ridges of a house will give a popular idea, they being the water-sheds of the roof, the gutters considered as its river channels. A little consideration will show that to look at the highest mountain ranges alone will give a very



incorrect idea of the water-shed, for all sorts of elevations, on each side of the roof, may be made without changing the tendency of the water from one to the other, as the following rough diagram will show :

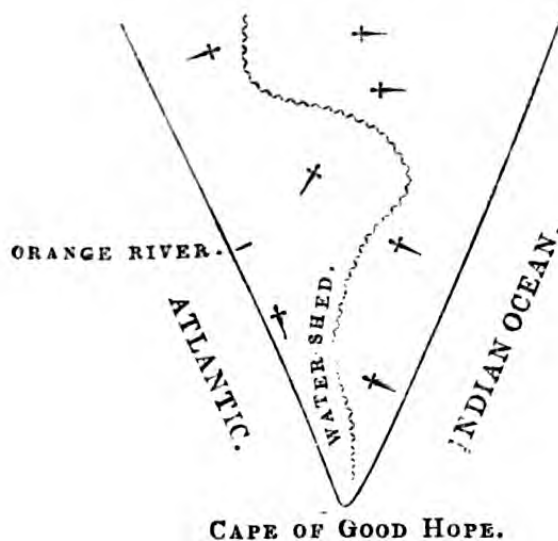


Here the fall from A, the line of water-shed, to B and C may be but trifling, and the face A B may be covered by high mountains, D D D, and the face A C may be a perfect plain, yet all the rivers between A and B will drain to B through opens and kloofs in the mountain ranges D D D. Of course, if no such opens existed, lakes would be formed at the foot of the mountains until the waters exceeded the level of A, and so discharge themselves along the slope A C. But this seldom happens in nature, and in the Cape colony especially are many instances of rivers running a considerable lateral course to find a vent to reach the sea; for example, the Olifant's River, east, the Magalies River, the Zonder End River, Touws River, Great Fish River, and many others, the valleys of some of which are considerably higher in the upper part of their course than the summit level or water-shed line of the river system they belong to. The Great Fish River is also a good example, rising as it does in the high valleys of the Sneeuwberg and running a considerable distance before it meets a gap in the mountain ranges to escape through.

255. *Water-shed line of South Africa.*—As South Africa forms a vast triangle, the base of which is too remote to affect the present question, the river system of the country must be considered as discharging itself into the two oceans that bathe its sides, namely, the Indian and Atlantic. The base, of course, is the Mediterranean. But if any large inland sea existed near enough to affect the flow of the rivers to the north, the case might be different, and the water-shed would be thus more complicated; but such does not appear to be the case. The insignificance of Lake Ngami as a receptacle of drainage is now well known, and can no more affect the general tendency of rivers to reach the sea than a little indentation in a gutter would hinder the water to flow along it; and the larger Lake Nyassi is north many miles of the northern water-shed of the Zambezi, or perhaps connected with



it, the southern water-shed of which river forms the northern one of South-Eastern Africa—at least of the river systems connected with the Cape colony. In other words, to recur to the homely simile of a roof, South Africa may be supposed a vast triangular one with one ridge bisecting its acute angle, not very regularly certainly, but something in the form shown in the diagram, and it will at once be seen that there are only two oceans to receive its waters.



The line thus roughly shown may be more particularly defined by mentioning the principal localities it passes near. Commencing, then, at the Cape of Good Hope, it bisects the peninsula from north to south until it reaches Wynberg. Thence it crosses the Cape Flats along the high ground dividing the waters of the Eerste and Zout Rivers, along the ridge of Simonsberg at the sources of the Berg River in Franchehoek; then north along the ridge of the Drakenstein mountains to Nieuwekloof, and along the low neck which separates the waters of the Little Berg and Breede Rivers, up the north side of Mitchell's Pass to Karroo Poort, crossing the Karroo along the ridges of the Little Roggeveld which divide the water-courses—for they can hardly be called waters—of the Doorn and Groote Rivers from those running into the Touws and Gamtoos. Thence along the top of the Nieuweveld mountains to Waai Poort, and across the high plateau north of the Camdeboo mountains, rather more than half way between Richmond and Graaff-Reinet, to the Compassberg, which may be termed one culminating point or nucleus, for the waters run from its flanks in all directions,—

the Great Fish, Sunday's, Zeekoe, &c., running east, south, and north from it. From thence the water-shed follows the summits of the secondary ranges of the Rhenosterberg, Zuurberg, and Bamboesberg, until it reaches the Stormbergen, where it is exceedingly well defined. From the Stormberg it runs north-east parallel to the coast, and about 80 to 90 miles distant from it, as far as the Mont aux Sources at the head of the Orange River, which forms another nucleus, as it were, in the mountain range, from which issue, to all points of the compass, the waters of the Orange, the Caledon, the Vaal, the Tugela, and the Umzimvooboo Rivers. It still follows the mountain line, which here, forming the boundary between Natal and the Orange Free State, trends more away from the coast until it reaches the high central plateau from whence spring the remotest sources of the Vaal River and those of the Limpopo. This plateau, which runs nearly east and west, may have, when it falls abruptly to the coast, a height of between 7,000 and 8,000 feet. Hitherto the general direction of the water-shed from Cape Point has been nearly parallel to the coast, or north-east, but it now, for some hundred miles, runs from east to west, as far nearly as Kolobeng, on the east edge of the Kalihari desert, separating the waters flowing north into the Limpopo basin from those flowing south into that of the Orange River. The mountains now begin to be lost in the sandy plains of the Kalihari desert, across which, in a north-westerly direction, a few miles south of Lake Ngami, the water-shed now runs until it reaches the high table lands of the Ovampo country, whence it runs north about 200 miles from the coast of the Atlantic, but probably soon trends to the north-east, so as to form the basin of the Cuanene. The height of the water-shed crossing the Kalihari is probably nearly 4,000 feet above the sea. A reference to a map will show this water-shed forming a huge horseshoe-shaped basin, discharging into the Atlantic, nearly five sixths of the area of which is drained by the Orange River and its affluents. The largest basins of drainage into the Indian Ocean, excepting the Zambezi, are the Limpopo (the embouchure of which is not exactly known), the Gauritz, Gamtoos, Great Fish, and Tugela Rivers. Cutting off the south-eastern angle of Africa by a parallel in the latitude of the most northern tributary of the Orange River, the area comprised will be about 850,000 square miles, nearly 400,000 of which are drained by that river and its tributaries. Allusion may here be made to the extraordinary phenomenon exhibited in the

water-shed of the Zambezi River and its tributaries. Two large branches are shown by Livingstone, anastomosing with each other; and more recently Mr. F. Green, who has ascended the Tonka—a large river running into the north-western angle of Lake Ngami—has ascertained that there is also a connection between it and the Zambezi; and further, that the Zouga River, in dry seasons, does not run out of the Lake Ngami at all, but where the Tamanakel joins, the stream divides, part running into the lake, part losing itself in large *vleis* to the eastward. Again, the natives, who are very trustworthy informants, describe the Cuanene heads as running in two directions,—one to the west, forming the Cuanene, and the other to the east, into the Tonka—thus forming a connection between the Zambezi and Cuanene Rivers, a thing almost unprecedented, as they disembogue into two distinct oceans. This can only be explained by supposing the interior of South-Eastern Africa to be at nearly a dead level, and yet the description of those grand falls given by Livingstone would lead to a different conclusion. In fact, after heavy rains, the rivers appear to flow in all directions, and some of them to be finally absorbed in the sands of the interior. As to Lake Ngami, it is fast vanishing. Mr. Green found only six feet of water in the centre of it, and could with difficulty push a boat of light draught through its shoals.

256. The minor lines of water-shed existing between the different rivers have not been mentioned here. They are, however, interesting, and worth studying, as conveying the most perfect idea of the surface of a country. On a small scale, the water-shed between the Great Fish, Kowie, Bushman's, and Kareiga Rivers may be studied near Graham's Town, the sources of tributaries of all these rivers being found adjacent to each other. The high lands about Gaikaskop and the Amatola also very beautifully illustrate the dividing lines between the Great Kei basin and those of the Great Fish and Keiskamma Rivers. In the Kalihari desert and the country of waters north of it, however, these water-sheds become very obscure and puzzling, a heavy thunderstorm often changing the direction of a river; so that one traveler may report a river running eastward, and the next may view it running in a contrary direction.

257. *Local Terms descriptive of the Physical Surface.*—In considering the mountains and hills of South Africa, there are certain local terms in general use and adapted, as it

were, into the geographical nomenclature of the country by universal consent. The principal of these will be found collected as an appendix, and they have quite, in South African geography at least, superseded the corresponding English expressions.

## CHAPTER V.—RIVERS.

258. There are several peculiar features in the rivers of South Africa. Those included in the coast river system, with but few exceptions, as the Berg, Breede, and Olifant's Rivers, east and west, generally run in deep beds, ploughed up by the torrents of water which sometimes come rushing through the narrow gorges of the mountain ranges which run parallel to the coast, the effect of thunderstorms bursting over the Great Karroo desert and the high mountains range bordering it, or over the elevated basins of the division of Cradock or Queen's Town. Lichtenstein describes, in elegant terms, the frightful chasm by which the united streams of the Gamka, Dwyka, and other periodical streams pass through the Great Zwarteberg mountains, forming, near the sea, the Gauritz River. Along the coast of the George division, where the mountain range approaches very close to the shore, the many streams there, although their course is but a few miles, have formed beds, many of them several hundred feet in depth, and running in deep valleys often many miles in width, rendering traveling along the coast very difficult. Such is the general nature of the rivers of the coast region, as far east, nearly, as Natal. With the exception of the Breede River, none of the South African rivers are navigable for any useful purpose; even the Orange River, which drains a surface of 400,000 square miles, is hopelessly barred with shifting sand-banks and its course impeded by numerous shallows and rapids; although at Aliwal (North), several hundred miles from its mouth, it is a noble and beautiful river. The Zambezi, also, which is almost beyond the river system spoken of in this work, although navigable, appears to have its entrance impeded with many difficulties. Some of the rivers disembouging into Delagoa Bay have, however, been ascended for many miles, and been favorably described.

259. The impediments at the mouths of the rivers are banks of sand, thrown up by the fierce winds and currents meeting round the southern extremity of the African



continent, and owing to peculiarities of climate, unfortunately, the rivers, although sometimes rapid and impetuous torrents soon diminish in volume, and very often cease to flow at all for months. Under such natural disadvantages we can hardly hope, even with the assistance of modern science, to see South Africa benefited by the navigation of her rivers, an element which has raised America to such a height among the nations of the world. No deltas or mud deposits are found at the mouths of any of the rivers west of the Utukela, but that of the Zambezi covers several hundred square miles.

260. Generally speaking, the rivers of the coast regions take the shortest course to the sea. They, however, often are diverted from it by the interpositions of mountain ranges. They are seldom available for irrigation, except near the upper part of their courses, the Great Fish, Gauritz, Gamtoos, Bushman, Great Kei, &c., running, when approaching the ocean, in deep beds, sunk many feet below even the narrow valley which extends between the lofty heights which bound their course on either side. In many of the upland valleys, however, near the sources of the rivers of the coast region, such as the Warm Bokkeveld, Twenty-four Rivers, Olifant's River (east and west), Zwagershoek, the valleys of the Sneeuwberg and Great Winterberg, the Kat River, and division of Queen's Town, irrigation is practicable to a great extent, and in many other places, by a scientific system of damming, the available arable land of the Cape colony could be increased to an almost indefinite extent. The heads of the Gamka and Dwyka Rivers, and their branches, and the sources of many other streams, now draining the Great Karroo, could, by properly damming the narrow valleys in the Nieuweveld and Roggeveld mountains, in which they rise, be made to afford a sufficient supply of water to make the now sterile Gouph in reality what its Hottentot name denotes, *i. e.*, a fat field. The same observations apply to nearly all the narrow kloofs and valleys of the mountain ranges of South Africa. The water-courses have too great a fall, and the country is pretty much in the condition of a slated roof with good draining;—a heavy shower falls, the pipes sometimes, perhaps, overflow, but the water eventually runs off and leaves the roof dry as before.

261. The great majority of the rivers here are periodical, *i. e.*, only flow after heavy rains. A few in the western districts of the Cape colony, the Breede, Berg, and Olifant's,

for example, are permanent. In Great and Little Namaqualand, the Kalihari desert, and the whole of the region situated on the southern slope of the Nieuweveld and Roggeveld mountains, whole years may elapse without the phenomenon of a running stream, and yet the magnitude of the dry water-courses of the Buffels, Hartebeest, and Oup or Borradaile River, all tributaries of the Orange, show how immense must be the torrents that sometimes sweep along them. The writer of this has seen the bed of the Great Fish River perfectly dry, and within twenty-four hours a torrent, thirty feet deep and several hundred feet wide, was roaring through it. In February, 1848, the Kat River suddenly rose upwards of fifty feet in the course of a few hours, sweeping seventeen feet above the roadway of a stone bridge at Fort Beaufort, supposed to have been built high enough to leave a clear water-way to the highest flood ever before remembered. The Gamtoos, Gauritz, and all the other rivers draining the Karroo, are also subject to very sudden rises, although, generally, but dry channels. The periodical rains falling on the mountains near its sources, between September and March, also swell the Orange River to a great extent, and large portions of land along its banks are then inundated.

262. The waters, especially when low, of many South African rivers, are brackish, *i. e.*, contain, in solution, chloride of sodium and magnesium, sulphate of lime, &c., all component parts of the soil and rock their beds run through; hence the occurrence so often of the names Brakke (bitter) and Zout River, on the map of South Africa. These brackish waters occur in all parts of South Africa, both along the coast and in the interior, and are often a source of bitter disappointment to the thirsty traveler, being very often of a beautifully clear and crystal appearance. Habit, however, reconciles the Cape colonist to these bitter waters, so that often, like the use of salt, really fresh and sweet water appears insipid to a farmer who has been for years quaffing the saline draught of some Pekel Fontein or Brakke River. On some soils, it is believed, brackish water can be usefully employed in irrigation, especially those formed by the decomposition of the old quartzite rocks.

263. The course of nearly all the rivers in the more sterile parts of South Africa can be traced by a belt of vegetation along their banks, consisting principally of mimosa and willow trees, and, on the lower course of the Orange River, of a species of bastard ebony.

## CHAPTER VI.—LAKES, SALT-PANS, VLEIS, FOUNTAINS, HOT SPRINGS, ETC.

264. The only collection of water in South Africa to which the denomination of lake can be given is Lake Ngami, in latitude  $20^{\circ} 40'$  and longitude  $23^{\circ}$  east, first reached by Dr. Livingstone and Mr. Oswell, in 1846, and already mentioned in Part I. This lake, which is about fifty miles long with an average width of eight or ten, receives, at its north-western extremity, the waters of the Tonka River, supposed to be an anastomosing branch of the Zambezi, rising in a chain of mountains far to the north-west, in which are said to be situated, also, the heads of the Cuanene River. Its course is tortuous in the extreme, and it is often very difficult to discover in what direction it is flowing. On the eastern extremity of the lake issues a similar stream, called the Zouga, which, by means of a tributary, called the Tamanakel, is also connected with the Zambezi system. Thus, Lake Ngami forms, as it were, a vast pool of little depth; and according as the rains fall north-east or north-west, so do the streams we have mentioned appear to flow, often in opposite directions, so perfectly flat and level is the surface in this part of South Africa. Its height above the sea is 3,713 feet.

265. *Salt-pans*.—The waters of the river Zouga, as it runs to the west, are generally absorbed in the brackish soil of the desert, and form immense dry beds of shallow lakes covered with an efflorescence of salt. Dr. Livingstone estimates the width of the pan Ntetwe at ten miles, and its probable length at one hundred; and south of it is a still larger pan, discovered by Mr. Chapman, into which several channels of periodical torrents appear to enter from the east, while the waters of the Zouga appear to reach it on the western side. The whole of these large surfaces are generally perfectly dry and covered with reeds; and beds of salts of lime, soda, and several smaller salt-pans are also found in the locality. The largest salt-pan in the Cape colony is the Commissioner's Pan, in Bushmanland, first visited by Mr. G. Thompson. It is a shallow basin with a circuit of eighteen or twenty miles, its surface generally dry and covered with a crust of salt. It is situated in the midst of the Bushman desert, about 100 miles north-east of the village of Calvinia. Pans producing excellent salt are also found near Bethelsdorp and in the



Coega, near Uitenhage; also in the Cradock district, in the Griqua territory, several places in the Free State, and other localities.

266. *Vleis*.—Vlei is the colonial term generally given to any body of water collected in shallow pools, not fed by periodical springs or rivers, but varying in extent according to the fall of rain or dryness of the season. It is also applied in certain cases to the collections of water which often accumulate near the sand of the coast, caused by small and sluggish rivers whose waters are unable to force their way to the ocean, as in the case of Verloren Vlei, in the Piketberg, Zoetendal's Vlei, near Bredasdorp, &c. In some cases, after heavy rains and when the localities favor their formation, large tracts of country are transformed into what seem to the passing traveler large lakes. Of this kind is De Beer's Vlei, at the junction of the Kareka and Zout Rivers, on the borders of the Graaff-Reinet and Uitenhage divisions, in the Great Karroo; Zout River Vlei, near the Nieuweveld mountains, between Beaufort (West) and Murraysburg; and De Beer Vlei (the Burder's Vlei, of Campbell), near the junction of the Brakke with the Orange River, in the Hope Town division. But these are very often quite dry, and hardly to be distinguished from the surrounding country, except by, perhaps, a greener appearance. Vogel Vlei, near the Berg River, and Verkeerde Vlei, near the Karroo Poort, are pretty permanent sheets of water, and the latter is the head of the Touws River, a branch of the Gauritz.

267. *Fountains and Springs*.—Fountains are found more or less distributed over the face of South Africa, even in the most desert portion of the Kalihari, Namaqualand, and the Karroo; and wherever there is a fountain of fresh water, animal life of some sort may be met with. Unfortunately, in many of the geological formations of South Africa, the saline elements so predominate that the fountains and springs are often brackish; yet fresh water is often found in the close vicinity of the most alkaline soils and rocks. It would seem, however, as if there was a process of desiccation, both in the fountains and rivers, going on at present. Many of the rivers and fountains in Great Namaqualand, Bushmanland, and the Kalihari country, permanent in the recollection of many now living, have been dry for years. Livingstone tells us that the water supply of the Lake Ngami takes place in channels prepared for a far more copious flow. It resembles a deserted



eastern garden, where all the embankments and canals for irrigation can be traced, but where, the main dam and sluices being allowed to get out of repair, only a small portion can be laid under water. When Sebituane, the Makololo chief, passed through the Kalihari desert, some thirty years ago, the Sarotli fountain was a large piece of water; the burnt up and gaping Makoko, in the remembrance of many living, was a flowing stream; and the fountain at Kuruman gave, when Mr. Moffat first settled there, a much more copious supply than it does at present. Many deep pools formerly existed in the Kuruman and Malapo Rivers, now long dried up; and it would also appear that, in general, the fountains of the Nieuweveld, Winterveld, and Middenveld, or the country forming the northern slope of the great mountain range, have been getting, for years, weaker; showing the very great necessity for the construction of artificial dams wherever the locality will permit of it. In the Hope Town and Colesberg divisions many have been lately made, with good success. This partial drying of fountains may be, probably, caused by a recurring cycle of dry seasons.

268. Fountains sometimes require to be only cleaned and opened to give an increased supply of water; sometimes, however, they are completely lost by the same process. As a general rule, the waters in the sandstone and granitic formations are less brack and sweeter than those found in the clay-slates and argillaceous rocks of the Karroo, and the tufaceous beds of the Kalihari.

269. Sucking places are the small springs found in different parts of the Kalihari, and generally kept secret by the Bushmen, who suck out the water through reeds and preserve it in ostrich egg shells.

270. *Mineral Waters.*—There are many hot and cold mineral springs in South Africa. The principal within the colonial boundary are the Olifant's River hot springs, at the eastern foot of the Cardouw mountains, a chalybeate spring with a temperature of  $108^{\circ}$ ; the Brandt River hot bath, near Breede River, with a temperature of  $150^{\circ}$ . Hot springs also exist at Malmesbury, Caledon, at Warm Winterberg, near Montagu, Olifant's River (East), Cradock (hepatized water), temperature  $88^{\circ}$ , Aliwal (North), and several other places. North of the Orange River, in Great Namaqualand, is the hot spring called Nisbet Bath. Hot springs are also found near the sources of the Orange River, in the Transvaal country, Damaraland, and many other places in South Africa.

271. *Artesian Wells, &c.*—It is not probable from the peculiar geological formation of the country, that except in a very few localities, any attempt at the formation of artesian wells would be attended with success, from the comparative absence of the later tertiary formations; and although theorists from the time of Barrow have attempted to account for the scarcity of water in South Africa, yet the cause seems simple enough. The surface of the country is deficient in beds of gravel or the softer permeable rocks to allow of the sinking of the rains into subterraneous reservoirs, and the rain consequently either runs quickly off into the sea, or is evaporated by the heat and general dryness of the climate of the interior; and as a general rule, perhaps, it will be found that the number and strength of springs and fountains will be in an inverse ratio to their distance from mountain ranges; thus, traveling north from the Nieuweveld and Roggeveld mountains, the springs diminish on approaching the Orange River, and the country is consequently nearly a desert. Livingstone, however, considers that the geological structure of the Kalihari is such that the formation of artesian wells could be successfully carried out.

## CHAPTER VII.—GEOLOGY.

272. Although the labors of Bain, Atherstone, Wiley, Rubidge, and other modern pioneers in geological science, have done much in clearing away the obscurity which hung over the rock formation of this part of the globe, yet it would be hardly possible to give an extended and complete view of its structure; and, therefore, only such an outline of the subject as the data at hand will admit of can be given.

273. The geology of Great Namaqualand and the western coast region, as far south as the Olifant's River, may be considered as belonging to one formation—gneiss and schist—capped and overlaid in many places by newer rocks. The general mass of granite, which appears to underlie the gneiss, is very bare and exposed on the southern part of this region; but south of the Olifant's River it is covered by newer rocks, and only reappears at some points, as at Riebeck's Kasteel, Paarl Mountain, Joostenberg, and the base of Table Mountain, and along the shores of the peninsula to Cape Point. The Kamiesbergen and hills skirting Bushmanland are nearly all composed of granite and gneiss.

274. The gneiss rocks of Namaqualand are frequently penetrated by crystalline felspar rocks, many of them presenting indications of copper and other metalliferous productions, which have of late attracted attention to that part of South Africa.

275. Many of the mountains, both in Great and Little Namaqualand, show horizontal beds of sandstone or quartzite, identical, seemingly, with that which overlies the clay-slate and granite of Table Mountain; and it is probable that the extensive plateau of Bushmanland is partially composed of beds of the same rock, covered with deposits of tufaceous limestone.

276. The rocks in the immediate vicinity of the Orange River assume the most fantastic shapes, and everywhere may be seen veins of the whitest quartz traversing nearly black or ferruginous-looking masses of hornblendic schist or greenstone. No animal remains are found in any of the rocks of these regions. It is very difficult to distinguish between the granite and gneiss rocks, as they appear almost insensibly to pass into each other.

277. South of the Olifant's River is an apparently new geological region,—the mountain ranges, which there appear with a greater degree of regularity to run parallel to the coast, forming a series of steps, rising into the interior, which appear in a geological map, somewhat as the boundary lines between the different strata. In attempting to describe these, use will be made of the valuable geological notes on the subject scattered through the pages of the *E. P. Magazine*.

278. *Primary or Metamorphic Strata*.—The base of Table Mountain and Lion's Head, and the substratum of the whole country as far as the Olifant's River, is composed of highly-inclined clay-slates and schists, resting on granites which are often protruded. These slates and schists extend eastward as far as Gamtoos River.

279. *Devonian*.—On the outskirts of the rocks just described, and from Mr. Bain's sections, apparently with the same slope and strike, lie the devonian fossiliferous beds of Ceres and the Bokkeveld; and on the same authority a mass of clay-stone porphyry is described, lying between conformable beds of the devonian rocks and others which differ little from the last in lithological character, but which have hitherto afforded only vegetable fossils. These porphyritic bands extend from the Hantam in the west to the mouth of the Gulana in the east; but the igneous character of these rocks



have been warmly contested by other geologists, such as Wiley, Rubidge, &c. They may be well observed, close to Graham's Town, and crossing the road near the Ecça Valley.

280. *Table Mountain Sandstone or Quartzite*.—Surmounting, in patches of various size, all the rocks already described, and often assuming their dip and strike, are certain hard, quartz masses, with a generally horizontal position (as in Table Mountain), on their upper portion, while the lower assumes the dip and strike of the rocks on which they rest—(Mitchell's Pass). In the Eastern Province, the horizontal rocks, if they ever existed, are no longer recognizable. These quartz beds have few or no fossil remains, and are principally composed of silica, often stained with oxide of iron.

281. *Dicynodon Strata*.—Lying unconformably on the beds of the devonian rocks, are the dicynodon strata, the most interesting, in a scientific point of view, of the South African formations. They are generally little disturbed, and then locally assume the horizontal position, and are intersected in all directions by dykes of igneous rocks, which, when large, form the central axes of mountain chains. They abound in fossil remains, bones, shells, and vegetables. There seems, according to Professor Owen, to be good reason for referring them to the age of the new red sandstone, nearly. They also abound in lime and salt, and are probably of lacustrine origin. Mr. Bain considers these beds as the bottom of an ancient lake or sea, which extended north, as far at least as the Zambezi, which was probably one of the outlets by which its waters escaped. The Nieuweveld, Roggeveld, Sneeuwbergen, Winterbergen, Stormbergen, and Quathlamba mountains, are all composed of these rocks, more or less capped with greenstones.

282. *Oolitic Formation*.—In detached patches, along the eastern coast, between the Gamtoos and Great Fish Rivers, are beds of rocks, nearly horizontal and abounding in fossils, ammonites, gryphea, ferns, and fossil woods, which enable geologists to assign to them an epoch coeval with that of the oolitic strata of Europe. These beds have been deposited in ancient bays, the boundaries of which are easily made out. They are strongly impregnated with salt, and contain lime in abundance.

283. *Cainozoic*.—Beds of hard limestone and calcareous sandstone cap the lower hills of oolite along the coast. These contain shells, such as exist in the adjoining ocean at the present day. Besides the above lithological divisions are found various alluvial beds of clays, indurated by the iron oxides of





the sandstone rocks in the neighborhood. A considerable bed of this underlies the sands of the Cape peninsula, and is of such hardness that the walls of buildings can be constructed with it. Immense tracts are covered with beds of tufaceous limestone, such as the Kalihari and parts of Bushmanland.

284. *Geology of Table Mountain.*—The geological appearances on the flanks of Table Mountain afford a very good study to the pupil, if he wishes to improve his knowledge of that science. He will there find the clay-slate rocks, once, probably, lying horizontally, violently upheaved and standing as it were on edge against the mass of granite which appears to have been protruded in a state of fusion through the same, as will be seen on examining the line of junction on the beach, near Sea Point, and above the Gardens, on the Kloof road,—the clay-slate, intersected by veins of the granite in every direction, and a band of rock alternately changing from clay-slate and granite into gneiss. Over the upheaved clay-slate and protruded granite, will next be observed the nearly horizontal beds of quartzite, forming the crest of the Lion's Head, and the steep escarpment of Table Mountain. All round the flanks of the mountain, near the shore, the rocks are covered with those beds of indurated clay called iron-stone gravel, the *débris*, probably, of the sandstone cliffs and schistose beds of the clay-slate. The sandstone of the Devil's Hill, it should be observed, rests directly on the beds of clay-slate, the granite appearing to pierce the mountain, and reappearing again on the Wynberg side, and continuing to appear along the beach, on both sides of the peninsula, to Cape Point, capped with sandstone.

285. In the Natal colony, sandstones, probably similar to those found in the eastern districts of the Cape and Kaffraria, are found along the coast. Farther inland are formations of sandstone, without animal remains, probably similar to the quartzite already described, and often assuming the tabular form. A large vein of granite is said to traverse the mountain range running north-east to south-west, and causing much local disturbance. In the north-western part of the Quathlamba are beds of shale and soft sandstone, traversed by veins of basalt. The rugged summits of the Quathlamba appear to be an easily decomposed sandstone.

286. *Minerals.*—The only metallic deposits found, of any value, in South Africa, are those of copper, in Namaqualand, which, although known for many years, were first turned to any practical account in the year 1852–3, by the enterprising

firm of Phillips and King, of Cape Town. These copper deposits are probably continuations of those worked by the Portuguese in Loando, and extend as far south, nearly, as the Kamiesbergen. On the eastern termination of the Magaliesbergen or Cuanene mountains are also large deposits of copper ore, which is smelted by the natives. In the Cape colony, indications of lead are found at the Maitland mines, near Port Elizabeth, and native iron and iron ore is found in many localities. Small traces of gold have been found in many of the copper ores of Namaqualand. Asbestos and soap-stone is found in Griqualand and north of the Vaal River.

287. *Coal*.—Although several beds of carbonaceous matter, more or less combustible, have been found in many places, near Burghersdorp, in the Stormberg, at Kneehalter Nek, near the Kowie Mouth, &c., none of them have proved of any practical utility.

288. *Brack Soil*.—The greater proportion of the surface of the Cape colony and adjacent regions is composed of brack soil, fitted only for the growth of particular plants; and the springs that issue from these formations are invariably brack.

289. Brackishness in a soil is not derived from the plants growing on it; on the contrary, the plants do not give,—they only receive. There is no saline matter in the air or rain water, so that the only source the plants derive their saline character from is the soil itself.

290. A. Wiley considers that the salt deposits and salt impregnations of the surface soil, so common, not only in Namaqualand but all over the colony, can be only accounted for by the fact that the sea was once present where they now occur; and this more particularly explains the preponderance of brackish ground in Namaqualand, Bushmanland, and the Kalihari. As the fall of rain is there, annually, so small and the drought so protracted, the soil never can be thoroughly washed and cleansed from saline particles, as it has been in more favored localities.

291. The plains of Bushmanland, in the higher parts, at least, being covered with a deep bed of fine sand, and subject to heavy summer rains, are getting, probably, purged of brack, to a certain degree, the salt being washed into the large salt pans, on the eastern side, and into the plains of Namaqualand, on the western, and are covered with sweet grass; while the adjoining flats in Namaqualand, where less rain falls, are brack, bushy karroos, and the fountains become more brackish on descending towards the coast or river.

292. It is probable, also, that the blue slates of the dicynodon system hold in their component parts salts of lime, easy of solution, and decomposed felspar, one of the component parts of granites and gneiss rocks, contains potash and soda, which are easily washed out, and when not absorbed by growing crops may, in a country subject to droughts, accumulate in the soil. The fountains in the blue slate districts are generally brackish. The other great rainless tracts, such as Northern Africa, Central Asia, and Australia, and the country west of the Rocky Mountains, all resemble portions of South Africa in this respect, a defect which can only be cured by a total change of climate.

293. *Volcanoes and Earthquakes.*—There are no active volcanoes in South Africa, though the traces of volcanic action in the immense igneous dykes and croppings of many of the hills in the dicynodon strata show how powerful the internal forces must have acted at one period. Shocks of earthquakes—the last on the 14th August, 1857—have been occasionally experienced, but without inflicting much damage. Hot springs are of frequent occurrence.

294. *Caves.*—Very extensive caves with magnificent limestone stalactites exist at Cango, in the Great Zwarteberg range, near the village of Oudtshoorn. Nearly all the other caves are merely recesses formed by the overhanging masses of horizontal sandstone, and formerly formed the residence of the aboriginal Bushmen.

#### CHAPTER VIII.—HYDROLOGY.

295. *Oceans.*—The western coast of South Africa is bathed by the Southern Atlantic Ocean; the southern and eastern by the Indian Ocean. A great bank, called L'Agulhas, runs from near the mouth of the Great Fish River, round the coast nearly to St. Helena Bay, at a distance varying from forty to one hundred and fifty miles from it, and which, probably, at one time formed part of the continent. Between the southern edge of the bank and the coast, soundings can always be got, in from sixty to ninety fathoms; but the depth of the ocean suddenly increases beyond this limit.

296. *Currents.*—Round the edge of this bank, in a south-westerly direction, flows the current known by the name of the Cape current, which is formed by the junction of the current running between the main land and island of Madagascar,



called the Mozambique current, and the current from the seas south of Madagascar. A part of the Cape current is deflected by the L'Agulhas bank and flows round by the Cape of Good Hope, into the South Atlantic current; but the main portion turns southwards, in latitude  $21^{\circ}$  to  $24^{\circ}$ , and then passing eastwards forms an important counter-current, mixing with the South Atlantic counter-current.

297. The Cape current is from ninety to one hundred miles wide, and at different parts of its course flows at the rate of sixty to one hundred miles a day. This rate is, however, often impeded or accelerated by the prevalence of north-west or south-east winds. Outside the L'Agulhas bank the temperature has been observed  $8^{\circ}$  above that of the ocean. Many counter-currents, running near the coast from west to east, are observable; and some dangerous ones near the coast of Uitenhage, east of Plettenberg's Bay, appear to set right on the shore.

298. *Bays*.—The coast line of South Africa is, in general, little indented by deep bays, and those that occur, with the exception of Saldanha Bay, are generally very open and exposed. The only islands found are a few inconsiderable rocks. Along the southern coast the shore is generally bound with very dangerous rocks. Along the western coast it is generally sandy, and in some parts the coast is lined with low granite rocks.—(*Vide* Part I, Chap. III.)

299. The oceans in the vicinity of South Africa are often agitated by violent tempests, and it is supposed the waves are the highest known; hence the old name of the Cape of Storms, given it by the early navigators. The sublimity of the scene, united to the threatened danger, no doubt, exaggerate, to a spectator, the magnitude of these waves. The average rise of tides along the coast of South Africa does not exceed four feet nine inches, and this cause combined with the tendency of the oceans, waves, and currents to sand up the river mouths on the coast, cause nearly all the rivers to be unnavigable.

#### CHAPTER IX.—CLIMATE AND OTHER METEOROLOGICAL PHENOMENA.

300. It is not intended here to enter into any scientific discussion as to the component parts of the atmosphere, the causes of rain, dew, twilight, mirage, &c., but merely to present



a few facts as to the meteorological phenomena of South Africa, and a simple description of the principal natural appearance which the winds, rains, and climate in general assume, from the valley of the Zambezi, south, to Cape L'Agulhas.

301. Considering the description of the climate of South Africa to apply to those regions south of  $20^{\circ}$ , it will be found, on inspecting Berghaus' rain chart, that that portion of it bounded by the parallel of  $20^{\circ}$ , and on the coast side by the mountain ranges which fringe the south-western and eastern coasts, is situated, if not in a rainless region, yet in one in which the rains are periodical and partial; and, indeed, it may be doubted whether rain ever falls in many parts of Great Namaqualand, the Kalihari, and Bushmanland (at least, in the portion east of the Hartebeest River). South Africa is, indeed, except in its eastern portions, unfortunately circumstanced, as regards the first great necessity of animal and vegetable life. Situated at the extreme southern angle of a large continent, the prevailing winds must of necessity blow towards the great heated surface of the interior, exposed to the influence of a tropical sun. Hence the prevalence of southerly winds, which, blowing over a cold sea, and in early summer over fields of ice, can bring little rain. If they came from the north-west they would come loaded with the moisture of the tropical seas, which would then be deposited on the northern slopes of the coast ranges, and fertilize the karroos and deserts; but the north-westerly winds do not seem to extend far to the northward, and their influence is hardly felt one hundred miles in the interior.

302. In the Cape colony itself, the prevailing winds are tolerably well marked by the monsoons, namely, the south-east, blowing from about October until March, and the north-west, from April until September. During the south-east season, dry weather prevails in the portion of the colony west of the Gauritz River, and the Eastern Province enjoys fertilizing rains; and, *vice versa*, the northerly winds, which bring rain along the coast regions of the west, prevail in the form of hot, dry winds in the Eastern Province.

303. It may be easily imagined that such an extensive region as South Africa presents many very different belts or zones of climate; yet, until the unhealthy regions of the eastern coast, north of Natal, and the swampy levels of the great central valley of the Zambezi or Leambye are reached, the whole may be considered as exceedingly favorable, in a healthy point of view, and may be conveniently classified as

follows:—The coast region, from latitude  $20^{\circ}$  south to the Olifant's River, and extending as far inland as the foot of the mountain ranges, the character of which may be broadly stated as subject to severe droughts—temperature characterized by intense heat in the day time, and nights, even in the hottest season, cold; it not being uncommon, in Little Namaqualand, to have the thermometer at sunrise as low as  $40^{\circ}$  or  $50^{\circ}$ , even in the middle of summer; while from 11 a.m. to 4 p.m. it will stand in the shade at  $100^{\circ}$ , or more.

304. In this region the rains, which are periodical, and very partial, appear to diminish towards the south, being, in fact, situated between the limits of the tropical rains and the regular rains of the southern parts of the Cape colony; and there is, probably, a zone of rainless region similar to those existing in North Africa, Australia, and South America, extending from the coast along the Kalihari desert, whose limits are, however, not strictly defined.

305. A. Wiley describes the climate of that portion of Namaqualand south of the Orange River as one which, in a tropical country, when the air was overcharged with moisture, would be depressing and unendurable; but in Namaqualand, it need not prevent any one from riding, or even walking, so long as the dress is in proportion and the head protected from the force of the sun's heat. It is not, however, favorable for longevity, as the extreme tension of the nervous system speedily gives way when one who has remained a few years in the dry climate changes to a moister one.

306. On the immediate coast it seldom rains, but dense fogs arise about dawn and continue till 10 or 11 a.m. Low fevers are prevalent, and the general absence of fresh water forbids us to consider the western coast of Africa, south of  $20^{\circ}$ , although free from marshes, as favorable to European constitutions for more than a few months' residence. This description will apply to Walwich Bay, as well as to the coast south of the Orange River. The prevailing winds in the neighborhood of the Orange River and Little Namaqualand are south-west, setting in from the sea, to the heated plains of the interior. In the winter, these high lands being colder than the western ocean, we have very cold east-north-east and south-east winds. No series of correct meteorological data have been kept in these regions for a sufficient length of time to afford any scientific results.

307. The northern parts of Namaqualand receive, partially, the benefit of the subtropical rains, which, sweeping along the

mountains which bound the valley of the Oup River, eventually reach the table land of the Bushman country. In the southern portion of Namaqualand the rains fall in winter; sometimes a heavy thunderstorm and rain-fall occurs in summer. Mr. Wiley estimates the average annual quantity of rain falling on the coast regions in Little Namaqualand at not more than four inches, and in some places not more than a quarter that depth. The deep sand of the valleys and river beds, however, preserves this small quantity for use, as water may be generally got by digging in the dry water-courses.

308. The next climatic division to be described is the belt of coast country extending from the Olifant's River (West) to the Gauritz River, and reaching inland to the mountains forming the western and southern edges of the Great Karroo. The characteristics of the climate of this division, although it varies in a few places whose elevation is considerable, as the Cold Bokkeveld, for instance, may be described as within the influence of the south-eastern moonson, and for eight months in the year, at least, during the prevalence of westerly winds, receiving a bountiful supply of rains from the ocean. In summer, the south-east winds blow with great violence, and are remarkable for the local phenomenon they exhibit in the neighborhood of the Cape peninsula and Table Mountain, called the Tablecloth. Thunderstorms are not so frequent as they are further inland, and more to the eastward, even along the coast,—the annual mean of observations of lightning at the Royal Observatory, Cape Town, for a period of thirteen years, being thirteen. For the same period the mean temperature was  $61^{\circ} 71'$ ; maximum  $97^{\circ} 4'$ , minimum  $38^{\circ}$ . The average fall of rain, 23.309. The mean height of barometer, 30.036. The barometer rises before south-east winds and falls (*vide* Meteorological Table in Appendix) before north-west.

309. The climate of Table Valley and its immediate one has certain local peculiarities which will be briefly described. The difference of temperature between the summit and base of Table Mountain is about  $13^{\circ}$ . The mean humidity of the air during the summer months, December, January, and February, is  $69^{\circ} 3'$ , and the mean temperature  $68^{\circ} 5'$ ; the corresponding temperature of the dew point is  $57^{\circ} 3'$ , or  $11^{\circ} 2'$  below the temperature of the air.

310. Assuming the humidity and atmospheric pressure to remain unaltered, the temperature of the air must descend about  $12^{\circ}$  before precipitation in the form of cloud fog or rain



can take place. This circumstance is intimately connected with the phenomenon already alluded to—the Tablecloth. If, therefore, the stratum of air was suddenly lifted 3,600 feet, which is nearly the height of Table Mountain, its temperature would be lowered  $12^{\circ}$ , and a portion of humidity would be condensed in the form of cloud or fog, irrespective of each cubic foot becoming lighter by sixty-one grains.

311. The strong and violent southerly winds which prevail during these months effect the displacement. Table Mountain, like a huge wall, receives some four miles in breadth of the current which bounds up with diminishing temperature, and deposits the celebrated tablecloth or cap on the top. The upper surface of this majestic white cap is smoothed off like a well-dressed peruke—its northern border hangs over the precipice, drapery fashion; but during very strong winds it pours down like a cataract to about 1,000 feet from the top, where, entering a warmer temperature, it dissolves and disappears. Before a south-easterly gale, the barometer rises and white fleecy clouds begin to gather on the summits of the Hottentot's Holland mountains. The same phenomenon is repeated on the Wynberg side of the mountain, in the summer season, when a north-westerly wind prevails.

312. The mean temperature of the cooler months, June, July, and August, is  $55^{\circ}$ , the humidity  $81^{\circ} 2'$ , and temperature of the dew point  $49^{\circ}$ , namely,  $6^{\circ}$  below the mean temperature of the air. The prevailing winds are north, north-west, west, and occasionally south-west. Hailstorm squalls are usually from the south-west, and lightning in that quarter is generally a sign of hard weather. The first indication of north-west winds is a fall in the barometer, and the appearance of a mass of condensed vapor rolling over the Lion's Hill; the air feels damp, and a swell sets into Table Bay. The violence of the north-west winds are generally in a ratio with the fall of the barometer. During north-west and westerly gales the quantity of rain falling at Wynberg, on the south-eastern side of Table Mountain, is much more considerable than in the valley. The respective falls of rain at Cape Town, the Observatory, and Wynberg, for 1858, up to the 26th August, being twenty-four, nineteen, and thirty-six inches.

313. The climate of the eastern division, from the Gamtoos River to Kafirland, is, on the whole, more agreeable than the western. Heavy rains and thunderstorms occur during the summer months, moderating the intense heat and keeping the surface of the country fresh and green. The winters are



often very cold, but the air is generally clear and agreeable; the maximum thermometer in the shade, at Graham's Town, 1,728 feet above the sea, in 1857-8, stood at  $106^{\circ}$  with a hot wind, the minimum  $35^{\circ}$ ; the annual fall of rain 32.18 inches. But very hot days are generally terminated by a thunderstorm and violent rain, which makes the average temperature less than the western division. In the year ending 31st May, 1858, twenty thunderstorms were observed in Graham's Town.—(*Vide* Table in Appendix).

314. The climate of the Great Karroo, extending from the Hantam between the two great ranges as far eastward as Graaff-Reinet, at an average level of 3,000 feet above the sea, is characterized by severe droughts, rain seldom falling, except near the mountains; an intensely hot temperature in summer, with cold nights, and in winter exceedingly sharp nights and mornings, with three or four hours high temperature between 11 a.m. and 3 p.m. Barrow thinks the extreme cold of the karroo plains is caused by the alkaline nature of the soil. No meteorological observations of any extent exist for this part of the colony.

315. The climate of the country north of the Sneeuwberg and Winterberg mountains and the plains of the Sovereignty, forming high plains from 3,000 to 5,000 feet above the sea, although subject to long droughts, is, on the whole, both salubrious and agreeable. In the summer months, the thunderstorms constantly occurring on the summits of the high mountains render the air cool and agreeable; and the winters, though sharp, are always clear, bracing, and agreeable; indeed, for pulmonary complaints, medical men agree that there is no finer climate in the world than the plateau of Cradock and Queen's Town and the plains of the Sovereignty.

316. In the immediate vicinity of the high ranges of the Maluti, Sneeuwbergen, and Stormbergen, snow lies on the ground for three or four months in the year, and of course the upper valleys present climates more or less temperate; but it is undoubted that this portion of South Africa is one of the healthiest in the world.

317. The climate of Natal partakes of that of the eastern coast region. In summer, rain falls daily, and thunderstorms are of constant occurrence. The thermometer on the coast ranges in summer from  $77^{\circ}$  to  $85^{\circ}$ , in winter from  $58^{\circ}$  to  $70^{\circ}$ ; on the first inland plateau, where the capital, Pietermaritzburg, is situated, in summer from  $64^{\circ}$  to  $75^{\circ}$ , in winter from  $48^{\circ}$  to  $60^{\circ}$ . Near the Quathlamba mountains,

which are covered with snow three or four months in the year, the winters are very cold.

318. Although some of the peculiarities of the climate of Betjouanaland and the Kalihari, in paragraphs 213 and 231, Part II, have already been described, it will be necessary, to preserve the unity of the subject, here to recapitulate them. The climate of Betjouanaland and the Kalihari is marked by a general deficiency of rain which, indeed, characterizes all the regions north of the coast mountain range, forming the basin of the Orange River. Livingstone thus accounts for it: "The reason, probably, why so little rain falls in this extensive plain is that the prevailing winds of most of the interior country are east with a little southing. The moisture taken up by the atmosphere from the Indian Ocean is deposited on the eastern slope of the mountain ranges, and when the moving mass of air reaches its greatest elevation it is then on the verge of the great valley, or as in the case of the Kalihari, the great heated inland plains; there meeting with the rarified air of that hot, dry surface, the ascending heat gives it greater capacity for retaining its remaining humidity, and few showers can be given to the middle and western lands in consequence of the increased hygrometric power. This is the same phenomenon, on a gigantic scale, as that which takes place on Table Mountain, in what is called the spreading of the Tablecloth.

319. "Now, if, instead of a hollow on the lee side of Table Mountain, we had an elevated heated plain, the clouds which curl over on that side and disappear as they do at present when a south-easter is blowing, might deposit some moisture on the windward ascent and top, as the south-easterly winds do now on the hill valleys of Kafirland, the Kat River, and Winterberg; but the heat would then impart the increased capacity the air now receives at a lower level in its descent to leeward, and instead of an extended country with a flora of the disagrandiflora, gladiolus, rushes, and lichens, which now appear on Table Mountain, we should only have the hardy vegetation of the Kalihari."

320. *Hot Winds*.—Livingstone thus describes one of the hot winds from the north-west, blowing across the desert:—"It feels somewhat as if it came from an oven, and seldom blows longer at a time than three days. It resembles, in its effects, the harmattan of the north of Africa, and at the time the missionaries first settled in the country, thirty-five years ago, it came loaded with fine red sand. It is so devoid of

moisture as to cause the wood of the best-seasoned English boxes and furniture to shrink, so that every wooden article not made in the country is warped. This wind is in such an electric state that a bunch of ostrich feathers held a few seconds against it becomes as strongly charged as if attached to a powerful electric machine, and clasps the advancing hand with a sharp, crackling sound."

321. Dr. Livingstone considers the borders of the Kalihari desert as admirably suited for all patients having pulmonary complaints. "It is the complete antipodes to our cold, damp English winter. The winter is perfectly dry, and as not a drop of rain ever falls, from the end of May to the beginning of August, damp and cold are never combined. However hot the day may have been, at Kolobeng, and the thermometer, previous to rains, sometimes rose to 96° in the shade, yet the atmosphere never had that steamy and debilitating effect so well known in India and in parts of the coast region of South Africa itself. You may sleep out of doors at night with the most perfect impunity, as for many months not a drop of dew falls."

322. Between the northern edge of the Kalihari and the Leambye or Zambezi valley, there is a zone of climate which forms a middle term between the dry region of the south and the more damp one of the "Country of Waters" to the north. In spring, the country suffers much from drought. The rainy season extends from September till April, but its approach is not so regular as further to the north. At Linyanti, the first rains fall about the end of September, and at Matlokako, the rainy season begins, according to Moffat, in October. In the same latitude, in Ovampo and Damaraland, although heavy rains occasionally fall, between November and January, the regular rainy season is from the first of January to the latter end of April.

323. The climate of the Transvaal, on both the northern and southern slopes of the Magaliesbergen and great central plateau, is dry and healthy, resembling that of the northern parts of the Free State; but farther to the north, the increased temperature and abundance of water engenders fever, and it assumes a tropical character. The same may be said of the Ngami regions, on the northern border of the Kalihari. The proximity to the great central valley of the Leambye or Zambezi, called, by the natives, the "country of waters," and the numerous anastomosing rivers which annually overflow, render it, in the summer season, very



unhealthy, and fever and ague are there very prevalent. On reaching the Leambye we enter into the zone of the tropical rains, which appear to follow the course of the sun.

324. *General Observations.*—In the whole of the regions already described are localities whose altitude or particular local circumstances give a distinguishing stamp to their climates; for instance, the deep and narrow valleys of the Olifant's River (West) are, in summer, intensely hot. Kannaland, between the Langeberg and Zwarteberg mountains, has a climate resembling the Great Karroo. The belt of coast between the Outeniqua and Zitzikamma mountains and the sea, being well wooded and favored with abundant rains, may, perhaps, be more damp and tropical in its climate than other localities near the sea. The hot and deep valleys of the Great Fish and Great Kei Rivers present striking contrasts to the cooler high lands bordering on them; and dwellers who have broiled in the Great Fish Valley will remember the delight they felt, in the summer season, when they could ascend for a day or two to the plateau of Fort Peddie or Graham's Town. Fort Beaufort may probably, in the summer season, be hotter than Calcutta or Rangoon; yet within twenty-five miles of it are the deliciously cool valleys of Post Retief and the Great Winterberg; and the difference in climate between Cape Town and Wynberg, although about eight miles distant, need hardly be alluded to. In Table Valley, grapes come to great perfection; the Alpine farms of the Cold Bokkeveld barely suffice to ripen the cherry. In Graaff-Reinet, the honest burghers groan and swelter through the summer months, while the villagers of Murraysburg enjoy cool summers, and can hardly bear the cold, scant of fuel as they are, of the Alpine winters of the Koudeveld. But hot as the climate generally is in the summer months, the prevailing dryness of the atmosphere renders it, except in a very few localities, one of the healthiest in the world; and with the exception of Australia, the Cape climate stands highest for salubrity in the statistics of the army medical department, deficient as is the accommodation and sanitary condition of many of our barrack buildings.

325. *Mirage.*—The phenomenon called mirage is very common, both in the interior heated plains and on the coast of South Africa, as it also is in the same latitude in North Africa. The illusions differ according to circumstances. Riding across the heated plains of Cradock or Colesberg, the spectator will suddenly see the whole features of the landscape



around him change; sugar-loaf hills will be changed into table mountains, and *vice versa*, and a distant secretary bird will appear as tall as an ostrich; sometimes imaginary lakes will be formed. The same phenomenon is often observed, both in Table and False Bays; the altitude of the surrounding hills changing in a surprising manner. This phenomenon is caused in the refraction of rays of light passing through strata of air of different density or moisture. Mr. Maclear took a scientific use of the refraction of the plains of Bushmanland, by observing, at certain times of the day, the position of the peak of Kabiskouw, about seventy miles distant from his station, which, by extraordinary refraction, was lifted above the horizon, when, under ordinary circumstances, it was invisible.

326. *Thunder and Hailstorms, Snow, &c.*—In the summer season, more especially in the northern and eastern parts of the Cape colony and the adjacent regions, thunderstorms are very frequent and violent, and are generally accompanied by the following phenomena:—After three or four days of very hot weather, small clouds begin to form on the horizon, generally in a northerly or north-westerly direction, early in the day; a hot scorching wind from the north-west sets in, often accompanied with clouds of dust, and the atmosphere assumes a dull yellow tinge. The clouds begin to accumulate and roll over each other in dark, smoky-looking masses, until gradually the whole sky becomes overcast. Soon distant rumblings are heard, gradually becoming louder, until at last the whole heavens seem in convulsions; bright and vivid flashes of lightning quickly flash in all directions, followed by rattling and pealing volleys of thunder, until the storm, gradually passing over-head, is succeeded by torrents of rain, and in a few hours all is calm and beautiful, the air cool; while on the horizon, in an opposite direction from where the storm proceeded, are seen during the night the soft reflections of the distant lightning as it passes away to the southward. Every three or four days, during the summer season, in seasonable weather, such storms occur, and although sometimes fatal to life and property, yet do immense service by revivifying the scorched vegetation and filling the dams and vleis with an abundant supply of excellent water. It is a grand sight, from a lofty mountain, to see a thunder-cloud discharging itself beneath you,—the almost instantaneous electric discharge arising from the earth, at one extremity of the cloud, and discharging its electricity to the earth at the other, gives one, indeed,

the visible sight of an immense electric telegraph in full activity.

327. Hail, although not common yet sometimes falls heavily, especially after long droughts. In February, 1849, after a drought of many months' duration, and in the midst of a very hot and almost cloudless day, a strange rattling noise was heard in the neighborhood of Fort England, near Graham's Town, and it was found that within a circle of not more than half a mile in diameter a hailstorm had burst; the stones of which, some of them like irregular jagged pieces of ice, were not less than an inch and a half in diameter, and lay, in some places, on the ground, nearly three feet in thickness, while all around was heat and sunshine. Large numbers of sheep are often lost by similar hailstorms in the frontier districts.

328. In the coast regions, very little snow ever falls, but on the high plains north of the Nieuweveld and Sneeuwberg mountains, in the Cold Bokkeveld and other high localities, the coast rains are generally precipitated in the shape of snow.

329. The only points in South Africa in which regular meteorological observations are kept are the Royal Observatory, near Cape Town, and the Royal Engineer department, at Graham's Town. Partial observations are, however, kept at the light-houses of L'Agulhas and Cape Recife; and Mr. Blore, of Wynberg, the Cape Town Municipality, Dr. Atherstone and Mr. McDonald, of Graham's Town, also make private observations of much value. It is, however, to be regretted that proper observations are not also carried on in a few points in other parts of the colony,—for instance, Hondeklip Bay and Springbokfontein, in Little Namaqualand, Clanwilliam, Calvinia, Beaufort (West), George or Knysna, Graaff-Reinet, Richmond, Oudtshoorn, Aliwal (North), Cradock, and Bloemfontein. The cost of providing a few trustworthy instruments for each of these localities would be but trifling, and if the initiative step were once taken, volunteers in the cause of science would be found at once to take charge of them and keep a daily record of their observations, which would be a most agreeable change in the usual dull monotony of a country village in South Africa. The determination of the mean fall of rain in different parts of the colony is, in particular, a point of the highest practical importance with reference to the economy of our agriculture, &c.

## CHAPTER X.—FORM AND DISTRIBUTION OF ANIMAL AND VEGETABLE LIFE.

330. The distribution of animal life in this quarter of the globe is a subject of considerable interest. In no part of the world is found a greater variety of the larger mammalia than in Africa, and no where did they once abound so numerously as in its southern extremity, comparatively speaking, but a very few years ago.

331. In the beginning of the eighteenth century, the elephant and the rhinoceros browsed on the proteas and heaths which clothed the skirts of Table Mountain; the lion crouched in the reeds of the Liesbeek; and the hippopotamus gambled in the waters of the Salt River. The hyena, within the memories of many living, served as a nightly scavenger to our streets and a resurrectionist to our churchyards, while troops of baboons levied black mail on the vineyards and tables of Table Valley. The splendid blaauwbok or roan antelope was found on the hill sides of Swellendam, the blesbok and quagga grazed on the downs of Caledon, whilst the rude pictures in the Bushman caves of Graaff-Reinet, Albany, and Queen's Town show that the giraffe, at no very distant period, was well known to the then savage inhabitants of the Sneeuwberg, the Winterberg, and Stormberg. All these animals have long since retreated far, far away; and with the exception of the hyena tribe, the smaller antelopes, and a few ostriches, are rarely to be found within the colonial boundary. All the larger mammalia are fast receding before the march of civilization,—the hyena, jackal, and wild dog alone keeping their ground, and prowling actively as ever as ovicides on our thinly inhabited sheep-farms, or making the night re-echo with their howls, while growling over the garbage cast on the dung-hills of a frontier outpost. It will be, therefore, partly the object of this chapter to fix, as accurately as possible, the habitat of the larger animals of South Africa, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and fifty-eight.

332. To prove the importance of this subject, we need here only remind our readers of the disappearance or extinction of the dodo from Mauritius, the dinornis from New Zealand, the elk from Ireland, the wolf and bear from Great Britain, and the almost extinction of the aurochs, lynx, and many other wild animals from the forests of Central Europe. We



shall proceed, therefore, to notice the localities in which a few of the principal animals, once so common among us, are yet found, commencing, as in duty bound, with his majesty Leo, the king of the beasts.

333. *The Lion (Felis Leo)*.—With the exception of part of Bushmanland, lying north of the Beaufort division, and the most eastern portions of the divisions of Queen's Town and Albert, we do not believe that a lion, at the present day, is to be found within the limits of the Cape colony. In the Free State, however, they are still numerous; also in the thinly-settled parts of Natal, the Transvaal Republic, Great Namaqualand, and Betjouanaland; in Kaffraria Proper, except in the rugged country, they have not been found for some years. The last lion killed on the eastern frontier was an old male, which was despatched by the assegais of Eno's Kafirs, near Cometjes Post, in 1842. But stray ones, no doubt, have been heard of in the thinly inhabited parts of the Uitenhage or Colesberg districts since that period. Some few years ago, the Bontebok flats, north of the Amatola mountains, now forming part of the Queen's Town division, was a famous hunting-ground for lions, and many a grizzly male, has fallen there a victim to the rifles of the Nimrods of the frontier. A reference to Pringle will show how numerous lions were in the now comparatively thickly-inhabited districts of Somerset, Bedford, and Fort Beaufort. In 1822, Lower Albany was also much infested with them.

334. The nearest accessible locality for sportsmen in search of the lion, at the present day, is the country east of the Kraai River and the heads of the Tsomo, about four or five days' journey from Queen's Town, unless the famous Bowker rifles of the farmers of that division have disturbed them. It is probable, however, that although the lion has almost ceased to make his permanent residence near the settled parts of the Cape colony, Natal, or the Free State, yet as long as the migratory herds of springboks visit us a few lions will be found hanging on their outskirts.

335. *The Elephant (Elephas Africanus)*.—The African elephant, strange to say, from the time of the Roman empire until A.D. 1856, was never seen in Europe; but a young one in that year was received in the Jardin des Plantes, in Paris, from Central Africa. When the Dutch first formed this settlement, on the shores of Table Bay, the elephant abounded in the immediate neighborhood; and the numerous hills, rivers, and fountains bearing its name throughout the colony, show



how universally it was distributed. At the present day, however, they are almost extinct in the Cape colony; a few, however, exist in the dense forests lying east of the Knysna and Plettenberg's Bay, and also in the rugged jungles of the K'adouw bush, between the Zuurburg mountains and the Sunday's River. These are, we believe, the only two colonial localities in which they are still found. The Fish River bush was formerly a very favorite haunt of theirs, but after the war of 1836, being much disturbed, they appear to have migrated in a body through the Buffalo forests and across the Great Kei into the almost inaccessible thickets east of the Umzimvobo, near the Natal frontier, where they are still numerous. Traces of their old paths and heaps of their gigantic bones are still commonly found in the thickets of the Great Fish River bush. We have to travel a long way north before we again meet the elephant, into the country north-east and north-west of Lake Ngami, from whence, after heavy rains, they migrate into the wooded plains of the Kalihari, and they are often met with by hunters from the west coast. The little-known regions on the eastern coast, called Sofala, likewise abound with very large elephants. None are met with in the Free State, and in the Transvaal Republic they have nearly been all extirpated.

336. *The Rhinoceros (Rhenoster of colonists).*—There are, at least, four distinct species of the rhinoceros found in South Africa, namely:—(1) the *Rhinoceros Africanus*, or *bicornis* (the *boreli* of the Betjouanas), is the common black rhinoceros, once common in the immediate vicinity of Cape Town, with two horns of unequal length; (2) the *Rhinoceros keitloa*, or black rhinoceros, with two horns of nearly equal length; (3) *Rhinoceros simus*, or common white rhinoceros, called *mohohoo* by the natives; and (4) the *kabaaba (Rhinoceros Oswellii)*, or long-horned, white rhinoceros, the most rare of all. The last rhinoceros killed in the Cape colony was an old male who was shot in 1853 on the Coega or Grassridge, near Port Elizabeth; another was killed, in 1842, near the Ecca Valley, in Lower Albany; and these, we believe, were the last survivors of the once numerous Chikooroo. They are still very numerous in the north-eastern parts of Great Namaqualand, the northern parts of the Kalihari and Betjouanaland, and the country along the Limpopo, but are no longer to be met with in the Free State, Kafirland Proper, or Natal, west of the Utugela River. Messrs. Oswell and Varden, in one year, killed no less than eighty-nine of these

animals, north of the Vaal River, and C. J. Andersson, in his journey from the west coast to Lake Ngami, dispatched nearly two thirds of this number. The rhinoceros must once have been very numerous in the colony, judging from the number of hills, rivers, fountains, &c., designated after it. Its favorite food is the spekboom and euphorbium. The last rhinoceros killed in the Free State was so far back as 1842.

337. *The Hippopotamus (Zeekoe of colonists).*—The hippopotamus is still numerous in all the rivers which intersect the sea-coast of Kaffraria, from the Keiskamma to the Zambezi, although, probably, the march of civilization in British Kaffraria has disturbed them in the waters of that district. The last, in the western part of the Cape colony, was killed in the Berg River, two years ago, and its remains now form one of the most striking specimens of the Cape Museum. An immense old male was killed, in 1850, by Lieutenant McPherson and Dr. Barclay, of the ninety-first regiment, near the mouth of the Keiskamma, and its head now graces the Medical Museum at Chatham. They were, up to 1848, numerous in the Great Fish River, and a few still may be found in the unfrequented "gats" and reaches of that stream, between Trumpeter's and Kafir Drifts. In the lower parts of Orange River they are still numerous, and they abound in vast numbers in the Leambye, Chobe, Tonka, and other rivers of the Ngami region.

338. *The Buffalo (Bos Kafir; Buffel of colonists).*—Except in the great forests of the Knysna division, the K'adouw bush, and the Fish River thickets, the buffalo no longer is to be found within the colonial boundary, and will probably not be met with south of the Vaal or west of the Umzimvobo River. In 1842-3-4, we have often met a small herd that frequented the country between the Koomes and Fort Brown, in Albany, and once saw a shaggy old bull grazing quietly with a span of bullocks, only a few hundred yards from the military post at Frazer's Camp. The favorite habitat of the buffalo, at present, appears to be the thorny thickets of Damaraland and the woody hills of the Limpopo and its tributaries. They are seldom seen on the naked plains of the Free State, as they prefer a wooded and bushy country.

339. *The Giraffe (Camelopardis—Kameel of colonists).*—That this animal was found south of the Orange River within the last century we have abundant proof in the pages of La Vaillant, Paterson, and others, although it could not have been very common, as few colonial localities are named after

it. Its form, however, may be seen depicted in many of the Bushman caves on the eastern frontier, and a tradition exists amongst the Hottentots that it was once very numerous in the Amaebi, or thorn country, now part of the division of Queen's Town. It has, however, long since retired before the tide of colonial emigration, and is not met with south of Kolobeng. Beyond that point it is found more or less numerous across the continent, from the Atlantic to the Indian Ocean, and as far north as the Nubian desert. Mr. C. Andersson found giraffes very numerous in that dense belt of thorny country which intervenes between Damara and Ovampoland, and in the acacia thickets along the skirts of the Kalihari. The giraffes brought to Europe generally come from Nubia and Sennaar. They were common even in the time of the Romans, the third Gordian exhibiting no less than ten at once in the amphitheatre.

340. An undulating country covered with high acacias or kameeldoorn, as the Kalihari, Limpopo mountains, Dongola, &c., is the natural habitation of the giraffe, whose long neck and elastic tongue seem formed by nature for browsing on the tender shoots of trees.

341. *The Cape Leopard (Felis Leopardis—Tyger of colonists).*—The Cape leopard, of which there are two distinct species, is found throughout the whole length and breadth of Africa, from the Atlas to Cape L'Agulhas. We often hear of it, even in the immediate neighborhood of Cape Town. We need hardly remind our readers that the Cape leopard, although popularly called tiger, is a very different animal from his majesty of Bengal. Leopards generally haunt deep-wooded ravines and thickets, and climb trees with great facility. They are not often, therefore, seen on the naked flats and karroos of the interior. Young baboons are stated to be a favorite repast of theirs. They are very dangerous to approach when wounded. Many other of the smaller species of the genus "felis," are also common.

342. *Hyena (Wolve of colonists).*—There are several species of the hyena found in South Africa. One species, the proteles or aarde wolve, we believe, is peculiar to the Cape; although not strictly speaking a hyena, according to some naturalists, but rather as a connecting link between the hyena and the jackal and dog. The other hyenas found in South Africa are the *Hyena crocuta*, the tiger-wolf of the colonists; the *Hyena striata* or striped hyena, a large species, often confounded with the former; and the *Hyena villosa*, strand



wolf or maned jackal, the smallest of the three species. The latter is chiefly found along the coast. These animals do not recede much before civilization, but continue to hang on the outskirts of our cattle-kraals and sheep-farms. In wet and cold weather, the wolf, or *Hyena crocuta*, grows very ferocious, and in Betjouanaland even ventures into the native huts at night and carries off young children. At night, they will quietly follow travelers on horseback or bullock wagons, trusting to chance for some accident happening which may help them to a meal.

343. *Jackals*.—Of jackals there are two varieties common in South Africa; the *Canis aureus* or common jackal, and the wilde honde, or wild dog, which hunt in packs. These animals are found universally dispersed over the whole of the continent of Africa, acting as tribes of useful scavengers; and near Cape Town, at least, affording excellent sport to the Nimrods of their community. The caama, from the skin of which the karosses called silver jackal are made, is a true fox (*Vulpes caama*), and is seldom met with within the limits of the colony, but abound in the Kalihari desert and Betjouanaland.

344. *Quaggas, Zebras, &c.*—The quagga and zebra (wilde paard of the colonists) belong to the genus equus, and are found in immense herds on the plains of the Vaal River, and as far south, sometimes, as the divisions of Cradock and Graaff-Reinet. These animals were formerly numerous on the eastern frontier, on the Quagga Flats, near Bushman River, and in the neighborhood of Bathurst, in Lower Albany.

345. *Antelopes (Bokke, of colonists)*.—In no other part of the world are so many varieties of the antelope family found as in South Africa, from the stately black bok down to the diminutive blauwbok or pigmy antelope, not less than twenty-seven species, many of which, however, are found in other parts of the continent, being reckoned south of 20° of south latitude. Of these the largest are the eland (*caama* or *Antelope oreas*), not now found within the limits of the Cape colony, but still met with in the western parts of Natal, and more plentifully in the Zulu country, the Transvaal territory, the Kalihari, Betjouanaland, and the Ngami regions. It was once very common in every part of the Cape colony, as the numerous localities called by its name testify. The eland, together with the koodoo, gemsbok, and springbok, are antelopes which can exist almost without water, as long as there is any sap in the herbage. The koodoo (antelope



*Strep sicerus*) is a noble antelope, with magnificent spiral horns. It was found in small numbers as late as 1848, in the thickets of the Fish River bush, but, we believe, has been since quite extirpated in the Cape colony, except a few, perhaps, in the Zitzikamma forest. They are found, generally, more or less numerous in all the wooded or bushy regions north of the Orange River and in the difficult country between the Umzimvobo and Natal. The sable antelope (*A. niger*), first described by Captain Harris, is a very beautiful and rare antelope, not met with until we reach the banks of the Limpopo, 200 miles north of Kolobeng, and forms one of the greatest prizes a sportsman can secure, even in that region, so prolific of game. The roan antelope (*A. leucophea*) is also getting very scarce; a few are still found in Moshesh's country, among the rocks of the Maluti, and from thence along the mountains to the Limpopo regions; it is also called the bastard gemsbok. The pallah (*A. melampus*) is found in Betjouanaland and the eastern edge of the Kalihari, but seldom south of the Vaal River; it extends, however, west, as far as Damaraland. It is also called the roodebok. The steinbok (*A. tragulus*), grysbok (*A. melanotis*), ourebi (*A. scoparia*—bleekbok of colonists), duyker (*A. grimmia*), blauwbok (*A. pygmea*), rhebok (*A. capreolus*), rietbok (*A. eleotragus*), roode rietbok (*A. fulvo rufula*), boschbok (*A. sylvatica*) of two or three species are found, generally, along the coast regions of South Africa. The graceful klipspringer (*A. oreotragus*) inhabits the tops of the most inaccessible kloofs and mountains; the blesbok (*A. albifrons*), the bontebok (*A. pygarga*), the gnu (*A. gnu*), the sassaby (*A. lunata*), the hartebeest (*A. caama*), and the brindled gnu (*A. catoblepas*), are all found in immense troops on the wide-spreading plains which reach from the northern slopes of the Magaliesbergen, south, to the Vaal, and thence across the Orange River to the districts of Graaff-Reinet, Colesberg, and Cradock. Immense migratory troops of the graceful springbok (*A. euchora*) also cover these plains as well on the northern slopes of the Nieuweveld and Bushmanland, at certain seasons of the year, when pasture is scarce in the Kalihari regions. At the present time (November, 1858), countless troops have invaded even the sterile pastures of Little Namaqualand. The curious gemsbok (*A. oryx*), supposed to be the fabulous unicorn, is found within the colony only in the northern part of the Hope Town division and along the Orange River, even to the shores of the Atlantic; it is common in Great

Namaqualand. A few bonteboks, we should state, are still preserved in the Bredasdorp and Swellendam divisions, on private farms. The waterbok (*A. ellipsiprymna*) and the lechee (*A. lechee*) are only found in the northern parts of Betjouanaland and the marshy country near Lake Ngami. A female specimen of the latter, we believe, is now to be seen in His Excellency the Governor's garden, in Cape Town, with many others of the antelope tribe. We have now briefly indicated the habitat of the principal large mammalia of South Africa, and proceed to notice one or two of the more remarkable birds and serpents.

346. The crocodile or alligator is not met with in any of the South African rivers west of the Umzimculu or south of the Mariqua, Ngotwane, Oori, and other streams which form the Limpopo, but they are exceedingly common in all the rivers of the Transvaal region and the Zulu country. They appear to be of the same species, or perhaps a smaller variety of those found in other African rivers.

347. *The Ostrich (Struthia—Struysvogel of colonists).*—The ostrich is a sort of connecting link between the mammalia and aves. In the time of Kolben, ostriches were so numerous in the neighborhood of Cape Town that a man could hardly walk a quarter of an hour without seeing one or more of these birds. It is found, in the present day, thinly scattered over many parts of the Cape colony, in the Piquetberg, Malmesbury, and Caledon divisions, in Little Namaqualand and Clanwilliam, the northern parts of Uitenhage, Beaufort, Colesberg, and Graaff-Reinet, and a few in the dams in the vicinity of Port Elizabeth. In October, 1858, a flock of twenty or thirty were seen in the Koeberg, a few miles from Cape Town. But the regions we receive our principal supply of feathers from are the dry deserts north of the Orange River. Many farmers in the western districts preserve these birds on their farms; and probably their domestication and annual plucking might prove profitable, as the best feathers range from six to ten guineas a pound in the European market.

348. *Reptiles.*—Many venemous snakes, the pofadder, cobra capello, ringal, boomslang, &c., are found all over South Africa. A species of python or boa is common in Natal and the Transvaal regions.

349. *The Tsetse (Glossina Moisitans—Poison Fly of traders).*—The entomology of South Africa is too extensive a subject to enter on, and we will confine ourselves to a few observations on an insect which, although insignificant in size

and appearance, plays a more considerable part on the economy of nature in these regions than the elephant or lion itself. We allude to the poisonous fly, tsetse, whose bite proving fatal to horses and cattle almost prevents explorations being carried on, except on foot, in those parts of the country it is found in. In a physical sketch of the distributions of animal life in South Africa, by Dr. Peterman, the limits of the tsetse are thus marked:—to the north it is found on both sides of the Leambye valley, from latitude  $13^{\circ}$  south, and more or less on the banks of the streams which enter Lake Ngami or join with the Zambezi river system; it is again met with on the banks of nearly all the rivers of the northern portion of the Limpopo and in the Transvaal region and the rivers which run south to Delagoa Bay. It is not found in any part of the coast region south of Delagoa, in the Free State, Natal, Cape colony, Great Namaqualand, and Ovampoland. It is not much larger than the common house-fly and nearly the same color as the common honey bee, and the bite of this poisonous insect is certain death to ox, horse, or dog, although perfectly harmless to man and wild animals, and even to calves, as long as they continue to suck the cow; also to the mule, ass, and goat. Immense tracts of country are thus made almost uninhabitable to man by this insignificant little insect. Of other insects, the locust plays a destructive part, and the common house-fly swarms in immense numbers in the farm-houses, in the summer months, and gives, perhaps, more real annoyance to humanity than any other insect, except the equally numerous and dreaded “*cimex lectuarius*.”

#### CHAPTER XI.—DISTRIBUTION OF PLANTS—PHYTOGEOGRAPHY.

350. The botany of South Africa is a too extensive and little known subject to enter on in an elementary work, and we will here confine ourselves to a few words on the distribution of the more useful cultivated plants and the natural productions which are of use either for domestic or commercial purposes.

251. *Cereals*.—Rye and barley are confined to the temperate zone. It is only in the high lands of Damaraland their growth extends into the tropic. Rye is the grain principally grown on the lower hills of Little and Great Namaqualand and the Roggevelds, where, in favorable seasons, it produces abundantly. Wheat is produced throughout the colony, Kafirland Proper, Natal, and parts of the Free State,



Basutu country, and even as far north, in elevated localities, as Angola and the valley of the Zambezi, where Livingstone found it of excellent quality at Zumbo and Tete. The principal colonial wheat-producing districts are Mlamesbury, Piketberg, part of Cape division, Cold Bokkeveld, Swellendam, Langekloof, Sneeuwberg and Winterberg valleys, Olifant's Hoek, and division of Queen's Town. Indian corn or maize requires considerable moisture for its growth, and is found growing in all damp situations in Betjouanaland, Kafirland, Natal, Zululand, the Free State, and Transvaal country, as well as in all the tropical regions to the north. The Kafir corn, or "holcus sorghum," has nearly the same distribution. Oats and oat-hay are grown abundantly in all the regions near the coast. Rice is seldom cultivated, except in the more distant coast regions of Angola or Sofala; but some of a very superior quality is grown in the colony, on the banks of the Olifant's River, west, where annual inundations take place. Many other kinds of grain such as millet, sesamom, &c., and are found cultivated in the tropical regions north of Delagoa Bay and the Zambezi.

352. *Roots, Vegetables, &c.*—The potato, under certain circumstances, succeeds well in every well-watered part of South Africa, south of 25° latitude, and has been much extended of late, in the Cape colony, and Livingstone found it growing even as far north as Cassange, where it was, doubtless, introduced by the Portuguese. Batatas and yams are found in every part of the great central valley of the Zambezi, the Transvaal country, and on the eastern coast, as far as Natal. Ground nuts are produced, plentifully, in Zululand and Natal, where they soon promise to become a valuable article of commerce. Arrowroot is also grown there in large quantities, and has been exported to a considerable extent. Melons, cucumbers, peas, beans, &c., are grown universally where there is water, from Betjouanaland to the coast.

353. *Fruits.*—Of all fruits, the vine has the most extensive distribution in South Africa; its juice forms a principal article of export from the Cape colony, and it flourishes well in Little Namaqualand, Natal, and the Transvaal Republic. It produces eatable grapes in the Zambezi valley, but further north it ceases to bring any fruit to perfection. The distribution of the orange tribe is also very extensive, reaching from the Cape of Good Hope to Angola. In the climate of Natal, the banana, pine apple, guavas, and other



tropical fruits come to great perfection. Of the more European fruits, the apple, pear, walnut, chesnut, almond, fig, peach, apricot, &c., all flourish vigorously in the Cape colony, wherever a garden can be planted, but the more northern kinds, such as the cherry, currant, gooseberry, and raspberry, only come to perfection in the high, cold valleys of the Bokkeveld and Sneeuwberg.

354. *Sugar, Cotton, Indigo, Coffee, &c.*—Although the sugarcane and its varieties appears indigenous in nearly all the tropical parts of South Africa, yet it is only in the colony of Natal that the manufacture of sugar is conducted on a large scale, and with every prospect of success,—the production of last year having been considerable enough not only for home consumption but to allow of a considerable exportation. Cotton grows wild, most luxuriantly, in the country of the Makololo, in the northern parts of Ovampoland, and on the eastern coast north of Delagoa Bay, and its cultivation has been lately introduced into the Natal colony. Indigo grows wild in nearly every part of the tropical regions, and also in Natal, from whence some very excellent samples of the manufactured article have been brought. The cultivation of tobacco is spread all through South Africa, and the Makololo and Betjouanas use and prize it not less than the boers and English settlers. The best colonial tobacco is grown in the valley of the Olifant's River, east, and other parts of the division of George. The coffee plant has been lately introduced into Natal, and has produced some excellent samples of the berry. Although hemp and flax are rarely grown, yet several wild species of these plants are found in many places, and one, the dacha (*Cannabis sativa*), is extensively used for smoking purposes by nearly all the natives of the interior—Betjouanas, Kafirs, and Hottentots.

355. *Medical productions, &c.*—The aloes, castor oil, buchu, stramonium, euphorbiums, gum mimosa, wax berry, and many other useful plants for medical and domestic purposes, are found indigenous in many parts of the Cape colony and surrounding regions in great abundance. Many native plants of great value for medical purposes are described by Dr. Pappe, in his useful publication on the properties of South African indigenous plants, Cape Town (1850).

356. *Forests and useful Timber Trees.*—Except on the coast side of the mountain ranges of South Africa there are few forests of any extent until we reach the basin of the Limpopo, the northern parts of the Kalihari, and the Ngami

regions, where, even although water is scarce, vegetation is most prolific. Little Namaqualand, save a few kakerbooms, is almost without timber, or large bush of any sort, except along the Orange River, and until we reach the Cederbergen, near the town of Clanwilliam, few trees occur, except along the margins of the dry river courses. Large forests occur on the eastern or inland slopes of these mountains, principally composed of cederboom (*Widdringtonia juniperoides*). No considerable forests of indigenous timber occur from thence, except a few wooded kloofs in the Zonder Einde and Langebergen, until we reach the extensive Outeniqua and Zitzikamma forests, in the division of George and the Knysna, which reach from the first range of mountains nearly down to the water's edge, and cover an area of not less than 2,000 square miles. Proceeding towards the east, we find many well-timbered kloofs, on the coast side of the Kouga and Winterhoek mountains, and crossing the Sunday River we come to the extensive K'adouw bush, extending from the western part of the Zuurberg to the sea, an extent of about eighty miles, with an average width of twelve miles. Olifant's Hoek, along the coast, is also well-wooded, as are also the kloofs of Lower Albany, when we reach the Great Fish River bush, which partakes more of the nature of a thicket than a forest, few of the trees, which are principally mimosa, wild olive, &c., attaining a height of more than ten or fifteen feet. Towards the mountains and along the Boschberg, Kromme, Chumie, Katberg, Amatola, and Buffalo mountains are dense forests of timber of considerable size, composed of yellowwood, sneezewood, ironwood, melkhout, and other colonial timbers. In Kafirland Proper are many large forests of magnificent timber, chiefly along the coast and some along the foot of the Matuana mountains. The coast region of Natal, the Transvaal territory, the northern parts of the Kalihari and the Ngami regions, are all densely wooded. In the tropical regions to the north of Betjouanaland and the Transvaal country, as we approach Lake Ngami, we find the hills covered with a dense vegetation of the evergreen softer trees, as strelitzias, zamias, spekbooms, different kinds of wild fig; and at the fountains of Lotlokane, latitude  $21^{\circ} 27'$ , the first palms are met, similar to the Indian palmyra, and the salt pans of Ntohokatsa are surrounded on the south-eastern side by a thick belt of the Mopane tree. Galton and Andersson, in Ovampoland, found the first palms in latitude  $20^{\circ}$ , and the latter found the

fan and date palm in the neighborhood of Lake Ngami. On the eastern coast, however, the palm is found as far south as  $31^{\circ}$  or  $32^{\circ}$ . The gigantic baobab or wild cotton tree (*Adansonia digitata*) is first met with on the banks of the Zouga, and with the mopane or iron-wood tree is found thinly scattered over the saline plains which stretch between Maila and Mababe. The different acacias, such as the camel-thorn, acacia horrida, &c., form dense forests in a zone extending between Ovampo and Damaraland. The woodless tracts are Little Namaqualand, Bushmanland, the Great Karroo, the northern slopes of the Roggeveld, Nieuweveld, Sneeuwberg, Winterberg, Stormberg, and Quathlamba mountains, down to the Orange River and far on the other side of it. Along the Orange River, and indeed generally along the banks of its tributaries, are broad belts of timber, chiefly of willow and acacias, and hardly fit for building purposes; but timber, even for firewood, is generally scarce in these regions, and the houses of Colesberg, Burghersdorp, and Bloemfontein can be constructed cheaper with timber cut on the shores of the Baltic or St. Lawrence than with that growing in the forests of the Amatola mountains, on the Kat River; so difficult is the timber of access and so bad the roads leading to it. Dr. Pappe has published a useful compendium of the timber trees of South Africa.

357. In concluding this division on the physical geography of South Africa, we would finally beg to impress on the minds of our readers the vital importance of two operations that almost any farmer may have it in his power at any time to perform, namely, the construction of dams and planting. The neighborhood of Cape Town, green and umbrageous as it is, owes its shade to the pine trees, blue gums, and European oaks, there introduced. Planting is gradually converting the once barren sands of the peninsula of the Cape into an incipient forest. In Graham's Town a few pine seeds sown by an engineer officer, the present Colonel Hope, a few years ago, have grown into stately trees. The orange groves of Robert Hart, of Glen Avon, in the division of Somerset, show with what profit the cultivation of that fruit, on a large scale, is attended. The plantations of fir trees, belonging to Mr. Breda, on the skirts of Table Mountain, only a few years old, even at one shilling each, would probably realize £40,000 or £50,000 sterling; and yet a great many localities in the colony, equally favorable to their growth and only requiring the sowing of a few



muids of acorns and fir seed, are left so destitute of timber that the farmers of the Roggeveld and Nieuweveld have often been known, in severe winters, to be obliged to burn their wagon-bottoms, yoke-skeys, and other wooden implements, to keep soul and body together; and it is well known that in all the country north of Graaff-Reinet, Richmond, and Cradock, the only available fuel in winter is the dung of the cattle and sheep kraals. Let the Cape farmers follow the example of T. B. Bayley, of Caledon, R. Hart, of Somerset, and other practical men, and plant on every damp and sandy spot on their farms, annually, a certain number of forest trees of quick growth, and in a few years not only timber enough for fuel, but for all other domestic purposes, will be in abundance. Surely, the fir that braves the frost and snow of Norway and Canada will hardly perish in the winters of the Sneeuwberg; and the oak, which so flourishes in the valleys of Drakenstein and Warm Bokkeveld, will do so equally in the now bare kloofs of the Rhenoster and Stormbergen; and the more recent introduction of the blue gum shows how easily useful foreign trees can be naturalized in this climate.

358. A deficiency of water is acknowledged to be one of the chief evils of South Africa, but it is one that can be much mitigated by industry and art. We must not forget that our average fall of rain, in a great part of the Cape colony, Kafirland, and Natal, is more than in England; and as an instance of how springs and fountains may be economised, we will here mention that Graham's Town, a town of five thousand inhabitants, is situated on the site of an old farm, the proprietors of which were accustomed, it is said, to migrate during certain months of the year to the banks of the Great Fish River from the want of sufficient water for their family and stock. And yet it would be presumptuous to say that hydraulic engineering has exhausted its resources in the Graham's Town water-works; yet, imperfect as they are, they afford a constant and generally a plentiful supply to the inhabitants. In like manner, many parts of the divisions of Hope Town and Colesberg, which we, formerly considered as uninhabitable from want of water, are now covered with valuable farms and afford some of the best sheep-walks in the colony,—all effected by the formation of dams.

359. In compiling the present work, we have freely used the valuable materials accessible to us of Livingstone, Moffat, Andersson, Wiley, C. Bell, the different contributions to Cape geography, geology, and statistics in the Eastern Province



and Cape Magazines, and the Cape Almanac; but, the nature of the work being perfectly elementary, we have been obliged to give but a meagre outline of a subject which would require a much larger volume to give a full one of.

360. We now conclude our labors, imperfect as they are, on the political and physical geography of South Africa. In the Appendix will be found many useful tables of reference we could not embody in the text; and it is possible that in a larger and more comprehensive work we may be able to include much omitted here, and give the Cape community a work much needed, namely, a comprehensive gazetteer of South Africa. We should also observe that we have touched but lightly on the regions north of Lake Ngami, including the great central valley of the Leambye and the adjacent regions, as rather beyond the scope of this little work, and as a full description of these countries so soon after the publication of Dr. Livingstone's valuable work might have, by degrees, perhaps, induced us to connect his discoveries with those of Dr. Barth, and so ascending north have finally terminated our labors on the shores of the Mediterranean.

361. The colonial geologist, A. Wiley, Esq., having just returned from his exploration of the northern parts of the colony, it may be expected that a new light will very soon be thrown on the geological features of that part of South Africa.

# APPENDIX.

[ I ]

Table of Geographical Nomenclature used as local terms in the Cape Colony.

LOCAL TERMS.	LANGUAGE.	CORRESPONDING ENGLISH EXPRESSION.
Agter .....	Dutch	Behind, as Agter Roggeveld (behind the Roggeveld).
Baai.....	"	Gulf or bay.
Baaken .....	"	A landmark.
Bad.....	"	A hot spring.
Berg.....	"	A mountain.
Bergen .....	"	Mountains.
Bergjies.....	"	Little mountains.
Bokkeveld .....	"	A country fit for the rearing of goats.
Bosch.....	"	Thicket or forest.
Bosjes .....	"	Little bushes as (Bosjesveld, a country covered with low bushes).
Bron.....	"	A spring.
Burg .....	"	A town.
Dal .....	"	A vale or dale.
Dorp .....	"	A village.
Drift .....	"	A ford.
Droogveld .....	"	A dry country or pasturage.
Duin or Dunien .....	"	Sand-hills covered with bushes.
Eiland .....	"	An islet (as Robben Eiland, &c).
Fontein .....	"	A fountain or spring.
Gat .....	"	A deep reach or hole in a river.
Gebergte .....	"	A large system of mountains.
Grasveld.....	"	A grassy region.
Hangklip.....	"	A rock or mountain which appears to overhang its base.
Hardeveld.....	"	A hard or rocky country.
Heuvel .....	"	A height.
Heuveltjie.....	"	A little height.
Hoek.....	"	A retired valley (literally, corner).

LOCAL TERMS.	LANGUAGE.	CORRESPONDING ENGLISH EXPRESSION.
Hoogeveld.....	Dutch	A high region.
Hoogte.....	"	A height or eminence.
Kaap.....	"	Cape.
Kamma.....	Hottentot	Water (the affix to many rivers, as Keiskamma, &c).
Karoo.....	"	A dry desert covered with certain low scrubby plants.
Klein.....	Dutch	Little (applied to certain districts, as the Klein Roggeveld, <i>i. e.</i> , the lesser).
Klip.....	"	A large isolated rock (as the Paalklip, Hondeklip).
Kloof.....	"	A pass through a mountain range or between two ranges of mountains,—generally the bed of a river.
Kolk.....	"	A hole or pit.
Kop.....	"	A small isolated hill (literally, head).
Kopjies.....	"	A group of small hills.
Koudeveld.....	"	A term applied to a high Alpine region (cold field, literally).
Kraal.....	"	A native village or cattle enclosure (literally, a tribe).
Krantz.....	"	A rocky precipice nearly perpendicular (literally, crown or wreath).
Kuil.....	"	A hole or cave.
Laagte.....	"	A low situation or valley.
Land.....	"	An extensive region or country outside the colony, as Kafirland, &c.
Nek.....	"	A ramification of a mountain range or a depression in the same.
Moeras.....	"	A bog or marsh.
Mond.....	"	A river's mouth.
Om or Um.....	Kafir	A prefix, signifying river (as the Umtata).
Omtrek.....	Dutch	A certain extent of country.
Plaats.....	"	Location or place.
Poort.....	"	A passage or opening in a mountain range (as Meiring's Poort—literally, gate).
Puit.....	"	A well or pit.
Rand.....	"	The highlands lying at each side of a river valley (as the Fish River Rand, &c.,—edge, literally).
Rivier.....	"	A river, great or small.
Roggeveld.....	"	A country well adapted for cultivating rye.
Rug.....	"	A rough, low hill. (Little back, literally).
Ruggens.....	"	A country covered with the same.
Spitzkop.....	"	A sugar-loaf or peaked hill.
Spruit.....	"	A head or feeder of a large river.
Strandveld.....	"	A region lying along coast.
Tafelberg.....	"	A flat-topped mountain, as Table Mt.
Thab'.....	Kafir	Mountains, as Thab' Inkulu.
Trekveld.....	Dutch	A country not yet divided into farms, into which the farmers occasionally migrate.

LOCAL TERMS.	LANGUAGE.	CORRESPONDING ENGLISH EXPRESSION.
Uitkyk .....	Dutch	A locality from which an extensive view is obtained (literally, outlook).
Valei or Vlei.....	"	A collection of water or a hollow place, generally of natural formation, as De Beer's Valei or Vlei, &c. (Valley, literally).
Veld.....	"	A large extent of country (as the Nieuweveld, Roggeveld, &c.,—literally, field).
Vlakte.....	"	Flats or low plains.
Waschbank.....	"	A country covered with white quartz and other rocks, looking, at a distance, like clothes drying
Winterveld.....	"	A region in which farmers have their winterlocations.
Witte.....	"	White (a local term generally applied to mountains whose tops are covered with snow during the winter season).
Zandveld.....	"	A sandy region.
Zee .....	"	The ocean.
Zoeteveld.....	"	A country covered with sweet pasturage.
Zuurberg.....	"	A name given to ranges of mountains of small elevation, covered with sour pasturage.
'Zuurveld'.....	"	A country covered with sour pasturage.
Zwarte.....	"	Black (a local denomination to many mountains).

## [ II ]

Table showing the height of some of the principal Mountains and Plateaux of South Africa.

NAME.	LOCALITY.	HEIGHT IN FT.	AUTHORITY.
Omatako mountain....	Damaraland	8,800	Galton & Anderson.
Omhotozu.....	"	7,300	" "
Plateau of Damaraland	"	6,000	" "
Lievenberg .....	"	7,200	" "
Barmen (miss. station)	"	4,324	" "
Mount Messum.....	"	3,200	Captain Messum.
Otjomatunga.....	"	5,189	C. J. Andersson.
Rehoboth (miss. st.)	'Great Namaqualand	5,350	"



NAME.	LOCALITY.	HEIGHT IN FT.	AUTHORITY.
Amhub .....	Great Namaqualand	4,480	C. J. Andersson.
Bethany (miss. st.)...	"	3,945	"
Kamiesberg.....	Little Namaqualand	5,130	T. Maclear, A.R.
Vogelklip.....	"	4,343	"
Plateau of Bushman Flat.....	"	3,602	"
Kabiskouw .....	"	4,514	"
Rietberg.....	"	4,500	A. Wiley.
Springbokfontein.....	"	3,200	"
Bokkeveldsberg.....	Calvinia	2,809	T. Maclear, A.R.
Lewisfonteinberg.....	Hardeveld, Clanwilliam	1,833	"
Heerenlogementsberg. Sneeuwkop, highest peak of Cedar mountains.....	Clanwilliam	2,381	"
Piketberg.....	"	6,335	"
Lambertshoek.....	Piketberg	2,847	"
Elandsberg.....	"	3,590	"
Highest peak of Winterberg, in the Winterhoek range	Near coast	619	"
Patrysberg.....	Tulbagh	6,840	"
Riebeeck's Castle.....	Malmesbury	889	"
Capocberg.....	"	3,109	"
Sneeuwkop in Hot- tentot's Holland mountains.....	"	1,508	"
Kogelberg.....	Stellenbosch	5,066	"
Table Mountain.....	"	3,988	"
Cape Point.....	Cape division	3,582	"
Kloof block-house.....	"	800	"
Babylon's Tower.....	Near Cape Town	1,465	"
Zwarteberg.....	Caledon	3,720	"
Zonder Einde moun- tains.....	"	3,440	"
Danger Point.....	"	5,330	"
Mudge Point.....	Bredasdorp	882	"
Hill near Cape L'Agulhas.....	"	1,467	"
Highest point of Lange- berg range.....	"	528	"
Potteberg.....	Swellendam	5,600?	Doubtful.
Great Winterberg.....	"	1,920	T. Maclear, A.R.
Gaikakop.....	Fort Beaufort	7,800	Dr. Atherstone.
Hangklip.....	Victoria	6,543	"
Stormberg range.....	Queen's Town	6,800	Col. Tylden, R.E.
Cockscomb, highest point of Winter- hoek mountains...	"	7,000	Estimated aver- age height.
Zuurberg range.....	Uitenhage	6,000	Dr. Atherstone (highest point ascended by him 5,697 feet).
	"	2,000?	

NAME.	LOCALITY.	HEIGHT IN FT.	AUTHORITY.
Compassberg.....	Graaff-Reinet	8,500?	
Graham's Town, site of.....	Albany	1,728	Dr. Atherstone.
Signal Hill.....	"	2,250	Observed by aneroid baro- meter.
Governor's Kop.....		2,750	" "
Komsberg.....	Roggeveld " mountains	8,100?	Barrow, from Col. Gordon.
Didima.....	Stockenstrom, Kat R. Settlement	5,871	Dr. Atherstone.
Mont aux Sources....	Basutuland	10,000?	French mission- aries.
Plateau of Great Karoo.....	Cape colony	3,000	A. G. Bain.
Plateau of Bushman- land .....	"	3,500	" "
Lake Ngami.....	"	3,713	C. J. Andersson ;
Kolobeng.....	Betjouanaland	2,900	Livingstone.
Linyanti.....		4,500	Livingstone.
Queba mountains.....	Near " Ngami	3,500	" "
Kobis.....	Kalihar desert	4,800	C. J. Andersson.
Kalihar desert, aver- age height.....	"	3,706	" "
Semalembue .....	Zambezi River	3,500	" "
Kolomo .....		3,300	Livingstone.
Zumbo .....	Junction of Zambezi and Loangwa Rivers	5,300	" "
Morambala mountains	Left bank of Zambezi, near the coast	1,440	" "
Lake Dilalo.....	Most remote source of the Zambezi River	4,000	" "
Site of town of Coles- berg.....	Colesberg	4,740	" "
Plains of the Free State .....	"	4,000?	General estimate.
Plains of the Nieuwe- veld .....	"	5,000?	" "
	"	3,500?	" "

Of the heights marked thus ?, the data are doubtful.

## [ II A. ]

Table showing the principal Rivers of South Africa, south of the 20th Area of

Names of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artery: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
No. I— <i>Rivers disemboguing into the Atlantic.</i>				
Swakop . . . . .	250	12,600	None of any importance.	None of any importance.
Kaisep . . . . .	160	6,000	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Here about 400 miles of coast intervene without any river worth notice.				
Gariop or Orange River	1,000	441,000	Cornetspruit : 1. Caledon River. 2. Vaal River and its affluents. <i>Right bank.</i> —Suikerbosch, Randspruit, Mooi Riv., Schoonspruit, Nonne Riv., Pogolla River, Hart River. <i>Left bank.</i> —Welge & Leibenberg Vlei R., Rhinosterspruit, Vaisch River, Gt. and Lt. Vet River, Modder and Riet Rivers. 3. Malapo or river of Kuruman and its tributaries. 4. Nosop River. 5. Keicop. 6. Great Fish or Borradaile River.]	Tees River, Kraai River, Welge R., Stormbergspruit, Brokepoortspruit, Zuurbergspruit, Oorlogspruit, Zee-koe River, Hondeblass River, Ougars River, Kat River, Hartebeest, Zak, & Great Fish Rivers.

[ II A. ]

degree South Latitude, their Affluents, Length of Course, probable Drainage, &c.

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not. . . . .	None . . . . .	Near the sea sandy and barren, in the upper part of its course the high table lands of Damaraland & north-west end of Kalihari.	Has no affluent of any importance.
Not. . . . .	None . . . . .	Do.	Do.
Not, except for boats a few miles above its mouth, which is barred. Extensive rapids in the middle part of its course.	Hope Town, Colesberg, Burghersdorp, Philippolis, Aliwal (North), Smithfield, Bloemfontein, Winburg, Harri-smith, Frasersburg, Victoria (W.), Richmond, Doordrecht, Fauresmith, Boshof.	Near its source high table lands and fertile country; in the lower part of its course, drains the Kalihari desert & barren tablelands of Bushmanland; a perfect desert.	Forms the northern boundary of the Cape colony; rises in the Mont aux Sources, in the Quathlamba mountains; lower part of its course, as well as its immediate source, little known; probable fall from its head to the sea 7,000 feet.



Names of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artery: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
<b>No. I.—continued.</b>				
Buffel's or Kousie River	90	3,600	Schaap . . . . .	Komaggas . . . . .
Zwartlintjies . . . . .	30	600	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Spoeg . . . . .	20	150	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Groen . . . . .	70	4,000	None . . . . .	Zwartdoorn. . . . .
Olifant's . . . . .	150	25,000	Great and Little Doorn, Hantam R., Holle and Kromme Rivers.	None . . . . .
Langevlei . . . . .	30	900	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Berg . . . . .	100	1,800	Little Berg and some small affluents, 24 Rivers, Matjes R.	Zout River. . . . .
Zout . . . . .	40	600	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
<b>No. II.—Rivers disemboguing into the Indian Ocean.</b>				
Eerste . . . . .	20	100	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Palmiet . . . . .	25	100	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Bot . . . . .	20	150	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Ratel. . . . .	15	...	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Breede . . . . .	190	5,800	Zonder Einde River, Zout River.	Hex River, Cogman's Kloof River, Cornland River.
Kafrkuil . . . . .	30	600	None . . . . .	Zoetmelk River, Vette River.

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not. . . . .	None . . . . .	Very rugged and barren.	Copper deposits worked along the upper course of this river, which formed old colonial boundary; very seldom flows.
Not. . . . .	None . . . . .	Do.	
Not. . . . .	None . . . . .	Do.	
Not. . . . .	None . . . . .	Drains Kamiesberg; country generally very dry and barren region.	
Not. . . . .	Clanwilliam . . .	Draining a great portion of Karroo country; fertile where irrigated.	Great Karroo intersected by its tributaries; river rises in Great Winterhoek mountain.
Not. . . . .	None . . . . .	Drains Piquetberg district; fertile in corn.	Forms large lakes near its mouth.
Navigable a few miles for cutters of 40 tns. burthen	Tulbagh, Wellington, Paarl, Hopefield.	Very fertile corn & wine country.	Enters the sea at St. Helena Bay, rises in Fransche Hoek mountains.
Not. . . . .	Malmesbury, D'Urban, Darling	District fertile in wheat.	Enters sea in Table Bay, rises near Riebeck's Castle.
Not. . . . .	Stellenbosch. . .	Do. and wine . .	Enters sea in False Bay.
Not. . . . .	None . . . . .	Good sheep country	
Not. . . . .	Caledon . . . . .	Do.	
Not. . . . .	Bredasdorp, Napier	Do.	Enters sea near Cape L'Agulhas.
Navigable for vessels of 150 tons as high as Malagas.	Villiersdorp, Swellendam, Robertson, Ceres, Malagas, Heidelberg.	Do.	Enters sea in St. Sebastian's Bay.
Not. . . . .	Riversdale. . . .	Do.	

Names of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artery: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
<i>No. II.—continued.</i>				
Gauritz, including the Gamka No river of any size occurs along the coast between the mouth of the Gauritz and the Kromme, although the country is well watered by little streams running out of the Outeniqua mountains, which here approach the coast. From west to east we may mention	300	19,125	Gamka and its affluents, Dwyka, Bloed R., Touws and affluents forming Groote River.	Olifant's River and its affluents, the Kammanasse and minor streams.
Great Brakke . . . . .	...	...	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Gwyang . . . . .	...	...	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Knysna . . . . .	...	...	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Keurboom's . . . . .	...	...	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Kromme . . . . .	90	1,000	No affluent of any importance.	No affluent of any importance.
Gamtoos, called Groote above its junction with Kouga.	320	13,150	Buffels River, Zout River, Amos River, Bavian Kloof R., Kouga River.	Kareiga River, Doorn River, Riet River.
Bakens . . . . .	...	...	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Zwartkop's . . . . .	45	500	Elands River, Brakke River.	None . . . . .
Coega . . . . .	60	800	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Sunday's . . . . .	220	8,000	Zwarte River, Camdeboo River, Bull River, Brakke R., Cumqua, Bezuidenhout's River.	Milk River, Little & Great Riet Rivers, Vogel River, Shoemaker's River, Witte River, K'adouw River, Little Sunday R.

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not. . . . .	Beaufort, Oudtshoorn, Lady-smith, Prince Albert.	Drains the Great Karroo & Gouph, & receives waters of the Zwarteberg and Nieuweveld ranges.	The name Gauritz is only known in lower part of its course; the Gamka may be considered that of its upper course; it rises in the Nieuweveld mountains near Beaufort.
Not. . . . . Not. . . . . Not. . . . . Can be entered by small vessels; a fine lagoon within its mouth.	Aliwal (South) George Town.. Belvidere village None.	These rivers drain a tract of forest land lying between mountains and coast.	Enters sea in Mossel Bay. Enters sea in Plettenberg Bay.
Not. . . . .	None . . . . .	Mountainous . . .	Disembogues into St. Frances' Bay, rises at end of Langekloof.
Not. . . . .	Murraysburg . . .	Great tract of Karroo desert & mountain.	Its highest sources are found on the high plateau between Richmond and Graaff-Reinet, in the Uitvlugt.
Not. . . . .	Port Elizabeth, Walmer.	Fertile.	
Not. . . . .	Uitenhage, Bethelsdorp.	Fertile and mountainous.	Enters sea in Algoa Bay, rises in Winterhoek mountains.
Not. . . . .	None . . . . .	Good sheepcountry	Do.
Not. . . . .	Graaff-Reinet, Jansenville, Aberdeen, Colchester.	Partly Karroo and fertile mountain valleys, forming fine sheepcountry	Rises in south fall of the Great Sneeuwbergen.



Names of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artety: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
<i>No. II.—continued.</i>				
Bosjesman's . . . . .	60	1,200	Little Bushman R. .	New Year's River Nazar River.
Kareiga . . . . .	35	560	Assagai River . . .	None . . . . .
Kowie . . . . .	30	360	None . . . . .	Mansfield . . . .
Great Fish River. . .	28	12,900	Doorn River, Spekboom River, Little Fish River, Botha's Hill River, Ecça River, Koome's R., Kap River.	Little and Great Brakke Rivers Tarka and its affluents, Baviaan's River, Koonap and its affluents—Kowie, east, Mancazana, west, Kaga Kromme, Water kloof. Kat River and its affluents—Blinkwater, Mancazana east, Elands River Klu Klu, Clusie.
Gualana. . . . .	13	104	None of any importance.	None of any importance.
Beka. . . . .	17	126	None . . . . .	None . . . . .
Keiskamma . . . . .	90	1,050	Isinuka, Amatola, Chumie, Gaga, Gwanga.	Debe, Umdizzini Tamacha.
Chalumna . . . . .	18	150	None of importance.	None of importance.
Buffalo . . . . .	55	600	Gowokobi, Icheza, Iquiba or Groen River.	Yellowwoods, Muotcha.

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not . . . . .	None . . . . .	Good sheep country	Rises behind the Zuurberg.
Not . . . . .	Salem, Sidbury. .	Grazing and agricultural country.	Drains part of Lower Albany.
Not . . . . .	Graham's Town, Bathurst, Port Frances.	Do.	Do.
Not . . . . .	Cradock, Somerset, Bedford, Fort Peddie, Fort Beaufort, Middelberg, Riebeek.	Upper part of course in Karroo country; lower part very bushy, good sheep country, many valuable farms.	Drains the eastern frontier, of which it was formerly the boundary; rises on north side of the Great Sneeuwbergen.
Not . . . . .	None . . . . .	Good pastoral and agricultural country.	These are considerable streams, draining the coast between the Great Fish and Keiskamma Rivers.
Not . . . . .	Wooldridge . . .	Do.	
Not . . . . .	Alice . . . . .	Do.	Forms the boundary between the colony and British Kaffraria, as far as its junction with the Chummie; drains a beautiful and fertile country, especially near its source.
Not . . . . .	None . . . . .	Do.	
Can be entered at mouth by small vessels.	King William's Town and East London. German villages.	Do.	This river promises to become a port of importance when certain proposed improvements are carried out.

Names of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artery: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
<i>No. II.—continued.</i>				
Kahoon . . . . . Gonubie . . . . . Kwelegha . . . . . Kwenugha . . . . . Ikuko . . . . .	average 25 mls. each.	1,200 by all these streams	None of importance.	
Great Kei River, calling Zwarte Kei principal branch.	170	7,000	Klip Plaats, Ituti, Windvogel, Doorn, Thomas, Kaboosie.	Klass Smits, Imvani White Kei and its tributaries—Cacadu Indwe, T'somo Dogana, I'goa.
Several small streams of no importance here intervene— I'goa, N'gabaxa, &c				
Bashee . . . . .	110	2,500	Gulindoda, Ixuxa, Umgwali, Colosa.	Umgola, N'gaga, Umtentu, I'bu.
Umtata . . . . .	75	1,500	Scitale, Cicira, Cacadu, Neikasi.	Umyeka, Icambel Couana.
Umzimvoobo . . . . .	150?	10,000?	Umwengani, Irinina, Icalili, Tena, Tsitsi, Umga.	Umzimkhlave, Im zimklava.
NOTE.—Nearly 100 small streams are found on the coast between the Great Kei and Umzimculu; none except those mentioned are of any importance. These small rivers seldom have a course more than from 10 to 20 miles in length, and their valleys seldom exceed 5 or 6 miles in width, and many not so much.				

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not . . . . .	None . . . . .	Good pastoral and agricultural country.	These small streams drain the coast slope of British Kaffraria from Buffalo to Gt. Kei R.
Not . . . . .	Queen's Town, Whittlesea, Shiloh, Tylden.	Very fertile country in upper part of course, lower part very rugged.	Zwart Kei rises in Great Winterberg, about 7,000 feet above sea; Klaas Smits and White Kei rise in Stormbergen; Klip Plaats, in Gaika's Kop, forms the boundary between British Kaffraria and Kaffraria Proper. Hintza killed in 1836 near N'gobaxa.
Not . . . . .	None . . . . .	Good pastoral country.	Upper sources are, in high cold table lands, but little known.
Not . . . . .	None . . . . .	Do.	Rises in the Matuana mountains; sources but imperfectly explored.
Not . . . . .	None . . . . .	Do.	The length, area, &c., of this river is only approximate, as its upper streams are very little known; rises in the Quathlamba and drains a great portion of Kaffraria Proper. Its great western branches, the Tena and Tsitsi, rise in the Stormbergen, east, and drain the large bare table lands that stretch along coast slope of the Quathlamba.



Names of Rivers.	Probable length of Main Artery: English miles.	Probable area of Drainage: square miles.	Names of Affluents, descending.	
			Right Bank.	Left Bank.
<i>No. II.—continued.</i>				
Umzimcucu . . . . .	120	2,000	Ibisi, Umzimculand.	None of importance
Umcomanzi . . . . .	100	2,000	None . . . . .	None of importance
Ilovo . . . . .	50	600	None . . . . .	None of importance
Umlasi . . . . .	50		None . . . . .	None of importance
Umgani . . . . .	80	1,500	None . . . . .	None of importance
Tugela or Utugela . .	220	10,000?	Blue Krans, Great & Little Bushman's River, Mooi River.	Klip River, Sunday River, Buffels R.
Omvolozia or St. Lucia River.	160	7,500?	White Volozi . . . .	Baviaan's River, Umpufana.
Mapootu . . . . .	180	10,000?	Pongola, Mokanto . .	Loosoolana, Tiger wolfe.
Oori or Limpopo. . .	940?	250000?	Ntlobatse, Omgaloze, Mahaholoukeina, Moguane, Lipalule or Olifant's River.	Aaps, Krokodil, Hex Keitling, Mariqua, Ngotuane, Lebota Prikui, Shoshe Mzinyanti.

NOTE.—The rivers are given from north to south and from west to east, in the order in which they are met on a journey from the coast to the interior. The rivers east of the Tugela are so little known that it would be useless to mention them. Between the Tugela and Delagoa, are the St. Lucien River and the Umvolozi and its tributaries drain an immense extent of country, although its embouchure is not far from the coast, and receives several considerable streams; it probably enters the sea either at Sobia or at Sobia.

Navigable or not.	Towns on or near main stream or its affluents.	Nature of country drained.	Remarks.
Not . . . . .	None . . . . .	Good pastoral country.	Forms west boundary of the Natal colony; country drained by it as yet little known.
Not . . . . .	None . . . . .	Do.	Country drained not much known, very rugged.
Not . . . . .	Byrne, Richmond.	Do.	
Not . . . . .	None . . . . .	Do.	
Not . . . . .	Pietermaritzberg, Weston, Pineton, D'Urban.	Do.	Rises in outspur of Quathlanba, enters sea in Bay of Natal.
Not . . . . .	Ladismith, Weenen Colenso.	Do.	Drains principal part of the Natal colony; rises in Mount aux Sources; forms east boundary of Natal in left front of its course.
Uncertain. . . . .	None . . . . .	Rich country . . .	Drains Zululand.
Not . . . . .	None . . . . .	Do.	Drains Amazwasi country and falls into Delagoa Bay.
Not . . . . .	Potchefstroom, Origstad, Zoutpansberg, Pretoria.	Do.	Drains Transvaal Republic and part of Betjouanaland.

In the order they occur along the coast. Popular or best known names only given. Attempt a description of them; the only ones, however, of much importance, are the Orange and the Limpopo. North-east of Delagoa are several large rivers, and the Limpopo and Orange are not exactly known. The Limpopo has a probable course of not less than 600 miles to the north of Imumpoora or Imhumbane, although some travelers (Mr. Edwards, for

[ II B. ]

Abstract derived from Observations at Cape Town Observatory during Fourteen Years.

MONTHS.	Barometer at Temperature 32°.	TEMPERATURE.					HUMIDITY.		Rain. inches.	LIGHT- NING. Recorded number of days.
		Mean temperature.	Mean daily range.	Mean of greatest range on any one day of each month.	Mean of least range on any one day of each month.	Mean of greatest range of each month.	Mean for each month.	Mean daily range.		
	inches.	°	°	°	°	°	per cent.	per cent.	total.	
January.....	29.931	68.77	11.13	25.6	8.0	30.2	68.7	20.7	0.880	10
February.....	29.931	68.99	11.76	26.2	7.8	30.8	70.6	20.9	0.653	18
March.....	29.968	66.29	12.28	28.5	7.0	33.1	71.6	21.5	0.846	26
April.....	30.002	62.95	11.26	26.7	4.6	35.1	76.1	20.6	1.846	24
May.....	30.069	58.01	9.17	25.4	4.5	30.7	80.6	15.7	3.576	19
June.....	30.129	55.35	8.66	24.2	4.2	29.1	81.8	12.8	4.311	9
July.....	30.160	54.57	9.07	22.7	4.8	29.0	81.6	13.4	2.921	4
August.....	30.147	55.21	8.89	24.2	4.6	29.0	80.2	13.6	3.323	9
September.....	30.098	57.43	9.41	25.9	4.7	30.8	77.4	15.9	2.332	14
October.....	30.051	61.06	10.36	26.0	6.3	32.6	73.8	19.1	1.014	9
November.....	29.985	64.28	10.34	25.0	7.8	30.5	70.8	19.4	1.090	6
December.....	29.953	67.61	11.46	25.3	8.9	27.9	68.5	21.1	0.516	9
Yearly means.....	30.036	61.71	10.32	25.5	6.1	30.7	75.14	17.9	23.309	13

Wynberg Meteorological Summary for Two Years.

Rain during twelve months.....	42.44	inches	
Barometer's Maximum .....	30.20	"	} not standard.
Do. Minimum .....	29.50	"	
Do. Mean .....	29.85	"	
Shade Thermometer, Maximum.....	98.02		
Do. Minimum .....	28.07		
Do. Mean .....	59.63		
Do. Night Maximum.....	84.0		
Thermometer's maximum in sun.....	148.0		
Dry and wet bulb, greatest difference.....	17.0		
Do. Mean .....	3.08		
Greatest force of wind, in miles, per hour	32	N.W.	
No. of calm days.....	117		
Do. rainy do.....	72		
Greatest amount of rain in one day.....	4.75	inches.	
Do. range of temperature.....	34.5		
Least do. do. ....	1.5		
Mean do. do. day.....	11.0		
Do. do. do. night.....	8.0		

Prevailing winds N.W. and S., S. by W. and S.W.

The northerly winds prevail in summer, and are refreshing, reducing the temperature, and are not so violent as the westerly winds in winter.

Abstract of Meteorological Registers kept at the Light-house Cape L'Agulhas, Latitude 34° 49' Longitude 20° 0' 45", for the Year ending 31st December, 1858.

MONTH.	BAROMETER.			THERMOM. OUTSIDE, IN SHADE.			Days on which rain has fallen.
	Max.	Min.	Range.	Max.	Min.	Range	
January.....	30.190	29.730	...	76.4	60.5	...	11
February.....	30.090	29.720	...	76.5	61.5	...	7
March.....	30.220	29.750	...	72.5	59.5	...	5
April.....	30.190	29.499	...	72.5	48.5	...	9
May.....	30.370	29.650	...	62.5	48.5	...	6
June.....	30.260	29.690	...	67.5	50.5	...	7
July.....	30.260	29.750	...	60.5	46.5	...	7
August.....	30.200	29.610	...	62.5	46.5	...	13
September.....	30.210	29.650	...	61.5	47.5	...	6
October.....	30.250	29.760	...	70.5	56.5	...	6
November.....	30.210	29.750	...	70.5	56.5	...	3
December.....	30.220	29.600	...	72.5	63.5	...	3
Mean.....	30.225	29.762	.463	68.9	53.1	15.8	83



Abstract of Observations taken at the Royal Engineer Meteorological Observatory, Head Quarters, Graham's Town, Cape of Good Hope, between 1st June, 1857, and 31st May, 1858.

Observations taken at 9.30 a.m.

MONTH.	Bar. cor. for index error, cap. action, and to temp. 32°.		Thermometer, in shade.	Rain.	REMARKS.
	Max.	Min.			
1857					
June .....	28.454	27.709	Max. 79.0 Min. 37.0	inches. .59	On the 6th, a thunder-storm. On 10th and 11th blowing a gale; max. force of wind per square foot, 12 lbs.; six vessels stranded in Table Bay. Weather this month very changeable.
July.....	28.697	27.840	Max. 79.0 Min. 35.0	2.37	There was a good deal of rain this month, accompanied with wind.
August.....	28.574	28.097	Max. 81.0 Min. 38.5	5.33	On the 6th, a thunder-storm, and also on the 9th. About half-past eleven P.M. on 14th, a shock of an earthquake was felt at Cape Town; one was experienced seven years ago, and one in 1811, much more violent, and overthrew some houses. Much rain this month.
September.....	28.696	28.097	Max. 85.5 Min. 40.0	2.26	On 10th, thunder-storm; on 30th, one also. Weather this month very pleasant.

October.....	28·670	27·852	96·5	83·0	41·0	2·31	On 6th, stormy; max. force of wind, 13 lbs; on 15th, thunder-storm; on 28th, one also. Weather this month very pleasant.
November.....	28·372	27·964	98·0	87·0	46·5	4·66	On 25th, thunder-storm; on 31st Oct. & 1st Nov. a gale of wind, accompanied with much rain; max. force of wind, 14 lbs., and more than 2½ in. of rain. Weather this month changeable.
December.....	28·381	27·819	102·0	90·5	48·5	1·65	On 17th, thunder-storm; on 28th, one also. Weather this month very fine.
1858							
January.....	28·341	27·842	105·0	94·0	51·0	2·68	On 14th, very warm; afternoon, thunder-storm, and evening, a shower of hail. On 21st, a gale of wind; max. force, 13 lbs. At half-past ten P.M., 22nd, a beautiful lunar rainbow was visible. The moon was about 7° above the horizon, and half full; the arc had an elevation of 35°. On 30th, a thunder-storm. Weather this month very fine.
February.....	28·362	27·846	*121·5	106·5	52·0	1·46	On 11th, thunder-storm; one on 23rd also. The 6th* was the hottest day and night yet registered, by ten degrees. Weather this month very hot and oppressive.
March.....	28·478	27·898	113·0	96·0	45·0	4·93	On 3rd and 27th, thunder-storms. Weather rather oppressive this month, with a good deal of rain.
April.....	28·523	27·657	104·0	88·5	44·0	2·39	On 9th and 10th, thunder-storms, accompanied with rain and hail. Weather this month very fine.
May.....	28·605	27·927	97·0	82·5	40·0	1·55	Weather this month very fine.
						32·18	

## [ III ]

Table of Chronological Events relating to the History of South Africa generally, physical and political.

B.C.	<i>First Period.—From earliest date till circumnavigation by B. Diaz.</i>
610-596	Circumnavigation of Africa by the Phœnicians in the time of Pharaoh Necho, according to Herodotus.
A.D. 800	The coast of South Africa, as far south as Delagoa Bay (Dugutha of Arabs), latitude 28°, known to the Arabs.
1480	Sofala visited by a Portuguese, Pedroo Cavalhao, from Abyssinia, before the route to sea by India is discovered.
1484	Diego Cam, a Portuguese captain, and Behem, of Nuremberg, reach 22° south latitude, and erect a cross on Cape Padrone, or Cape Cross, near Walvisch Bay.
1486	Bartholomew Diaz plants a cross on Sierra Parda, in 24° south latitude, a few miles south of present Sandwich Harbor; lands at Cape Voltas, south of Orange River, now Alexander Bay; rounds Cape of Good Hope without seeing it, and lands in Angra des Vaqueino. September 14, 1486, lands and plants a cross on St. Croix Island, in Algoa Bay, and penetrates as far east as Great Fish River, which he calls after one of his captains, Rio del Infante. Sights Cape of Good Hope on his return voyage home.
1488	Cape of Good Hope, called, by B. Diaz, Cabo del Totos Tormentos. Received its present appellation of Cabo de Boa Esperanza from John II of Portugal.
	<i>Second Period.—From Portuguese discovery until settlement of Dutch at Cape of Good Hope.</i>
1497	Vasco de Gama lands in St. Helena Bay, and was there wounded in the leg by the natives while taking the altitude of the sun, November 7; doubles the Cape on his way to India, November 19; discovers coast of Natal, December 25, and explores east coast as far as Melinda, including Delagoa Bay, called by him Aguaido de Boa Pax, Quillimane, and Mozambique. Rio del Infante, Portuguese admiral, landed in Table Bay.
1499	Vasco de Gama, on his return voyage, lands in Angra San Blas, now Mossel Bay; Bartholomew Diaz perishes off the Cape, in a ship of a fleet under Pedro Alvarez.
1500	Portuguese begin to form settlements on the west coast, in Angola; and about the same time the Kafir nation appears to have reached westward as far as the Great Kei River. Pedro Alvarez Cabral, commanding a division of a fleet to India, driven to the west, discovers the coast of Brazil, April 23; sailing east he lands at Mossel Bay.
1501	Pedro de Nueva touching at Mossel Bay, then Angra San Blas, there found a letter in an old shoe, from P. de Alayde, which letter describes how affairs stand in India. Island of Ascension discovered by Joao de Nova Galega.
1502	Island of St. Helena discovered by Portuguese captain, Joao de Nova Galega, on St. Helena's day.
1503	Table Bay first visited by Antonio de Saldanha, commander of 3rd division of Albuquerque's fleet, and named Alguado de Saldanha.

A.D.	
1505	Mauritius and Bourbon Islands discovered by Portuguese.
1506	Lorenz D'Almeida first visits Madagascar. Town of Mozambique taken by the Portuguese under Tristan D'Acunha and Albuquerque.
1507	Portuguese proceed with their conquests on east coast.
1508	Francisco D'Almeida, Count of Abrantes, first viceroy and governor-general of Portuguese India, killed in conflict with the natives on the shores of Table Bay, towards the close of this year. Sofala conquered by the Portuguese. Isle of Tristan D'Acunha discovered.
1522	The only surviving vessel belonging to the squadron of the first circumnavigator, Ferdinand Magalhaens, doubles the Cape on her homeward voyage, May 6.
1525	The Portuguese, about this time, appear to have attempted the formation of a settlement on Robben Island.
1576	Perestrelli, the Portuguese explorer, arrived at Alguada de Saldanha (Table Bay), 28th June.
1578	Town of St. Paulo de Loanda built by Portuguese.
1589	Benguela visited by the English mariner Andrew Battel.
1591	English fleet under Captain James Lancaster, afterwards the famous Arctic navigator, anchors in Table Bay. Published description of Cape of Good Hope and Kaffraria given by the Portuguese Lopez, in his travels in the countries between the River Congo, the Cape of Good Hope, and the Nile.
1593	Sir J. Lancaster anchors in Algoa Bay and is detained there by contrary winds six weeks.
1594	Cornelius Houtman draws the attention of the Dutch merchants to the east, and offers to act as a pilot to a fleet to the Indies.
1595	First Dutch fleet, under Jan de Molenaar, consisting of four ships, Cornelius Houtman pilot and supercargo, anchors in Table Bay; voyage lasts two years and four months.
1598	Mauritius taken possession of by Dutch, abandoned a few years after; reoccupied in 1663, finally abandoned in 1708; occupied by French in 1712, and ceded to England in 1815.
1599	English East India Company established.
1601	English fleet, under Lancaster, again visits Table Bay. The Dutch admiral, G. Spielberg, gives to the harbor Alguada de Saldanha the name it now bears, Tafel Baai or Table Bay. Dutch captain van Cowden visits and names Visch and Vleisch Bays.
1602	The Dutch East India Company first formed, March 20; Council of Seventeen appointed.
1605	Edict of Philip II of Spain, fulminating death to all inhabitants of the United Provinces who should engage in the Indian traffic.
1607	Dutch translation of Santo's work on East Africa, 1506, giving first description of Kafirs. Davis, the celebrated Arctic navigator, visits Table Bay.
1608	Dutch admiral, Cornelius Maaklof, touches at Table Bay; he leaves three rams and seventeen ewes on Robben Island.
1609	Captain Keelay takes some sheep from Robben Island, the fattest he ever saw, and leaves lean ones. Pieter Botha first governor-general of Dutch East Indies.
1614	The English attempt a convict settlement on Robben Island. Variation of the compass at this time, according to Kolben, 6° north-east.
1615	Sir T. Rowe, ambassador from James I to the Great Mogul, touches at Table Bay, 5th June.



A. D.	
1620	Formal possession of Cape of Good Hope taken by Captains Shillinge and Fitzherbert, in the name of His Majesty James I. First map of South Africa made by Lindschotten, at Amsterdam.
1626	Sir T. Herbert, traveler, lands in Table Bay, still called by the English Saldanha Bay. About this time, Table Bay appears as a place of great resort to ships of all nations, who were in the habit of leaving letters under certain stones, which are still sometimes found in Table Valley.
1642	Date of first French settlements in Madagascar.
1644	English form a settlement in Bay of St. Augustine, Madagascar; abandoned in 1650.
1648	Dutch Indiaman <i>Haarlem</i> wrecked in Table Bay.
1649	Jan Leendert and Nicholaas Pront, of the wrecked ship <i>Haarlem</i> , present a remonstrance to the Dutch East India Company, setting forth the advantage of making a fort and garden at the Cabo de Boa Esperanza. Van Riebeeck first visits Cape as doctor, in the fleet of Wallebrandt Geluijsen.
1651	March 25.—Date of instructions by Dutch East India Company to commanders of expedition to form a settlement at Cape of Good Hope.
	<i>Third Period.—From settlement by Dutch until final occupation by English.</i>
1652	April 8.—Dr. van Riebeeck lands in Table Bay, empowered to form a settlement at Cape of Good Hope. Fort commenced on the Zoete or Sweet River, the nucleus of the present castle, by Van Riebeeck. A great zeekoe or hippopotamus killed in the Salt River, April 24. Four Dutch deserters attempt first journey into interior, and penetrate as far as Hottentot's Holland, September 24. The ringleader, Jan Blank, gets keel-hauled, receives 150 lashes, and two years in irons as a slave. First recorded ascent of Table Mountain, September, 29. First child born in the fort the Good Hope, June 6. A fort or redoubt commenced near Salt River, probably near present site of Craig's Tower, October 2. Herman van Vogelaar, volunteer, sentenced to one hundred blows from the butt of his musket, for wishing the purser at the devil for serving out penguins instead of beef and pork. Government gardens laid out for the supply of shipping with vegetables.
1653	This night, it appeared as if the lions would take the fort by storm, January 23. This afternoon, a wolf seized a sheep within sight of the herds, January 27. Abraham von Riebeeck, son of the founder of the Cape, and subsequently eighteenth governor-general of the Dutch Indies, born at Cape Town, October 16. Corporal Muller, who had been sent to Saldanha Bay with three men on 13th October, returns on the 29th, having met many elephants, rhinoceri, elands, harts, hinds, and other game. October 19, the Hottentot interpreter, Herry, absconded, taking with him all the cattle of the settlement, which is reduced to great straits for provisions.
1654	Settlement in great want of supplies. First mention in Van Riebeeck's journal of Sonquas or Bosjesmen, March 6. "This day there was found on the mountain a dead bosmanneken, called in Batavia an ourang-outang, as large as a small calf, with long hairy arms and legs, of a dark grey color, which our people eat from hunger, for there is little nourishment in the pot-herbs, April 24."

A.D. 1654	Council of Seventeen, in a despatch, refer to the valley behind Table Mountain, extending to Hout's Bay, as very suitable for the growth of rice, wheat, and other grain. Mining speculations appear at this time to have attracted van Riebeeck's attention, January 28. He went out in person to inspect the place in the mountain, where we found large quantities of glittering ore. Young girls sent from orphan houses in Amsterdam to the Cape.
1655	A large rhinoceros killed near Salt River. "So many bullets rebounded from its body that we were obliged to cut out a piece with axes and then to shoot into its entrails between its ribs, and thus we killed it, January 8. The chaplain's wife gives birth to a second son; all the other ladies are also soon likely to follow her example, August 12. An exploring party, under Corporal Muller, which left on the 7th September, return. They appear to have reached False Bay and explored the Cape Peninsula, October 5." Dispatch from Governor-General and Council of the Indies, dated December 25, says: "As to the proposal of Mr. van Goens, to cut off the Cape from the continent, such would indeed be a good thing if it could be easily effected. The formation of a stone pier, to extend 70 roods into the sea, we agree with you in thinking one of the most necessary things at the Cape."
1656	First land broken up for cultivation in Rondebosjen, probably now Newlands.
1657	Jan Wouters, assistant, sentenced for blasphemous injuries against the characters of females at the Cape, including the commander's wife, to beg pardon on his bare knees, to be bored through the tongue, to forfeit his wages, and to be banished three years. Sentenced graciously in consequence of the pregnancy of his wife, March 15. The limits of Cape colony declared to extend north of the Cabo de Boa Esperanza to the north side of Sardingres Bay, with Dassen and Robben Islands to the east and south; jurisdiction unlimited.
1658	Pasqual Rodrigo, soldier, for theft and desertion, sentenced to receive one hundred lashes, confiscation of three months' wages, and to serve his term of five years to all dirty work. First cargo of slaves from Guinea arrived at Cape, March 26. First passage through the Berg River mountains effected by a party under Jan van Herwarden, through the Nieuwe Kloof, March 6. Use of dacha by the Hottentots mentioned. First burgher council nominated of four free men, June 22. The Hottentot interpreter Herry sent to Robben Island.
1659	A conspiracy discovered of the foreign soldiers in the garrison at the castle of the Cape, principally English, Irish, and Scotch, to seize the fort and murder all the Hollanders. The conspirators, five in number, sent to Batavia with Admiral Sterthemius, who happens to arrive in Table Bay, 14th November. First war between colonists and natives, caused by cattle stolen by latter from near Liesbeek River. Peace made with Gonnoma Hottentots, through the agency of the Hottentot Khermcemoa or Herry. Dutch allowed to occupy three Dutch miles round fort. War with the Hottentot tribes in vicinity of Cape Town.
1660	Expedition to Monomatapa, under Jan Duckert, sets out, crosses Berg and Olifant's Rivers, and probably reaches south edge of Namaqualand; Olifant's River at this time called by natives Tharakamma; meet the Namaquas.

A.D.	
1660	French ship <i>Le Marischal</i> , to St. Augustine's Bay, wrecked in Table Bay; crew and passengers, including governor and bishop, disarmed and put under restraint until ship gets afloat again. Namaqua Hottentot's first mentioned in colonial records.
1661	Cruythoff and Meerhoff's expedition to the country of Namaquas.
1662	Commander Jan van Riebeeck embarks with his family for Batavia, May 7. Commander van Wagenaar prays the Council of Seventeen to send him, by next ships, a little coarse window-glass and lead, to glaze the windows of the fort, now only covered with some coarse cotton, and a few common paintings to cover the ugly, bare walls of our front hall, as well as two or three of our desolate dwellings, August 10. The Orange River appears to be mentioned in the old colonial records, under the name of Vigita Magna; a party under Sergeant de la Guerre sent in search of it, October 20.
1663	The lions kill six or seven of the company's bullocks within the last two months. Small-pox and measles epidemic. Commander van Wagenaar asks for two bells "to enliven the farmers in this lonely piace."
1664	The island of Mauritius, surveyed by the Dutch in 1598, and resettled by them in 1663, "recommended as a proper locality to send your lazy debauched farmers of the Cape, should they be in debt, to keep up the garrison there." Finally abandoned in 1708. Number of free burghers at the Cape reckoned at fourteen. First vocabulary of Hottentot language made in the Greek character, by G. Wrede. Head and skin of "a furious lion brought into the fort, which had been, with great danger, shot," November 20.
1665	Commander Isbrant Goske arrives with precedence of the commandant while at the Cape, with instructions from the Council of Seventeen to build a new fort (the present castle), to be placed sixty roods east of original fort, August 19; the work, however, not commenced until 1672. <i>King Charles</i> , English man-of-war, from Surat, anchors in Table Bay; an attempt made to capture her by surprise unsuccessful. Willem van der Venter reports that having gone to Tygerberg, to bring home in a wagon a rhinoceros which he had shot the day before, they were surrounded and attacked by five terrible lions.
1666	Small-pox and measles epidemic. Anthony Jans and Anthony Arents, for stealing a cabbage, offence tending to the ruin of this growing colony, sentenced to be flogged, to work in irons on Robben Island for three years, and forfeiture of four months' wages.
1667	Governor van Quaalbergen dismissed the company's service for exchanging civilities with a French governor, homeward-bound, and not allowing him to "float on his own fins."
1669	Algoa Bay first visited by Dutch. Orders given to Commander Borghorst to take possession of Saldanha Bay, it having been reported that the French had erected a baaken on it with their arms. Several miners sent to the Cape by the Council of Seventeen, to search for precious metals.
1670	Governor P. Hackuis dispatches the hooker <i>Grundel</i> to examine the coast to the north; it returns 26th May, but finds no harbor except Grundel Bay, latitude 26° 36' (Angra Pequina). Expedition of the <i>Grundel</i> to the eastward; lose seventeen men, who are left behind in the bay Os Medas de Cura.

A.D. 1672	Hottentots' Holland sold to the company by Prince Dhour, for 81 francs. Contract between Commander van Overbeek and Hottentot chiefs to sell all land between Hout and Saldanha Bays for 4,000 reals, paid for by merchandise worth only 33 florins, 19th April. Isbrant Goske appointed first governor of the Cape of Good Hope; commences building the present castle, October 2. The <i>Flying Swan</i> sent eastward in search of the seventeen men left behind in the <i>Grundel</i> , returns unsuccessful, 2nd September. The vessel was instructed not to touch at the bays Hout, Struys, Vis, Mossel, Content, Algoa, and Rio del Infante, which have been visited by our people, by land, and tract most distant by said vessel. Commando sent against Gonnoma Hottentots, July 12.
1673	First establishment of Orphan Chamber. Expedition under Sergeant Cruse sets out against Gonnoma Hottentots. The <i>Flugt Zoetendal</i> wrecked near Cape L'Agulhas. The Hoilander Ten Rhyne publishes a description of the Cape and country of Hottentots. Almost all the company's oxen lost in the quicksand at Salt River, September 19.
1675	Small-pox and measles epidemic.
1676	Commando sent against marauding Hottentots, near Honingberg. About the time the castle being nearly completed, it appears the town was laid out; strength of garrison 200 soldiers, 150 officers, clerks, sailors, &c. First government schoolmaster appointed.
1677	January 18.—An expedition in the <i>Grundel</i> , under corporal Hatma, explores the west coast to south latitude 12° 47', as far as the Portuguese fort Sombeira, and reports, although there are several good bays there is no good land or fresh water, and that near to Sombeira, there are no other inhabitants than Hottentots. March 23.—A proclamation issued by Governor Bax, calling on the farmers to greater exertions in agriculture, as the directors had said that the country cannot be called a colony which cannot grow its own corn. April 12.—A proclamation issued, interdicting all farmers from keeping Hottentot sheep in their flocks. October 18.—The mining speculation carried on near the Lion's Head and Riebeeck's Castle discontinued, as the silver extracted—(it seems there was some, yielding 12, 8, and 6 per cent.)—would by no means pay the expenses of working and smelting.
1678	Simon van der Stell appointed governor.
1682	An English vessel in distress puts into Table Bay and seduces forty-three of the garrison to desert.
1683	English ship <i>Johanna</i> lost in Algoa Bay; crew found their way to Cape Town. Simon van der Stell makes a journey as far north as the Koperbergen, in Little Namaqualand.
1684	Fifty farmers and mechanics and fifty young maids are sent out from Amsterdam to the Cape, and settled about Stellenbosch and Drakenstein; Stellenbosch, Paarl, and Drakenstein settlements formed about this time, by S. van der Stell; Simon's Bay called after Simon van der Stell. A hunting party of boers, in the interior, first meet with the Kafirs. <i>Stavenisse</i> , Dutch East Indiaman, wrecked on coast of Kaffraria. Captain Wood Rogers, the buccaneer, visits Natal, of which he writes a description.
1685 to 1688	Emigration of French Huguenots to the Cape commences. Three hundred men, women, and children arrive, before 1690, and settle down in the neighborhood of the Paarl and Stellenbosch. Constantia first planted by S. van der Stell.



A. D.	
1685	22nd June.—First grant of land registered in the surveyor-general's office, Cape Town, situated in Table Valley, in favor of H. Cruse. Baron von Rheede, lord of Drakenstein, visits the Cape as commissary-general, to look into the administration of the government, and makes many alterations and ordinances. First government surveyor appointed.
1686	Wreck of ship <i>Bonaventura</i> , near Natal, 25th December. Shipwreck of Siamese ambassador, on Cape L'Agulhas, April 27. Van der Stell allows the Jesuits to erect a temporary observatory in the gardens, near site of St. George's Church. Father Tachart observes variation of compass at $11^{\circ} 30'$ west; he fixes longitude of Cape Town $40^{\circ} 30'$ east of meridian of Faro.
1687	Regulation of Council of Seventeen as to terms on which the French refugees will be allowed to become settlers.
1688	Kafirs advance as far west as Great Fish River.
1689	Ensign Schupen's mission to the Inqua Hottentots, near the Gamtoos River.
1690	Bay of Natal and surrounding country purchased from the natives by the Dutch.
1691	The rajah of Tambara banished to the Cape by the governor-general of the Dutch Indies.
1695	7th September.—Earthquake at the Cape.
1696	The celebrated buccaneer, W. Dampier, touches at Table Bay on his return voyage round the world.
1697	Date of castle bell, which now rings the hours.
1698	Leguat makes number of houses in Cape Town at 300, Kolben, some years after, at 200; the latter probably is right. All the houses thatched, in consequence of the high winds.
1699	W. A. van der Stell succeeds his father as governor; his father lives retired near Stellenbosch, and dies and is buried in great magnificence in 1712.
1700 to	About this time appears to have been founded, by the rather fast
1705	governor, van der Stell, the governor's "lusthuis" and gardens, at Newlands; the "lusthuis" in the government gardens, now Government House; the brewery, near Newlands, of Jac. Louwen, now Cloete's; and Simon van der Stell's magnificent country seat, at Hottentots' Holland, the present estate of the Theunissen family; besides various buildings in the castle. Batteries first erected at Camp's Bay. The water-course now forming the Heerengracht sewer first lined with brick, to prevent damage to church and hospital.
1701	Settlement of Roodsand or Waveren, now Tulbagh, formed behind the Berg River mountains, called after the Waveren family of Amsterdam, the maternal ancestors of Simon van der Stell. All the company's servants at the Cape obliged to give up their landed property.
1702	An exploring party of forty-five burghers and four wagons travel east, into the country of the Kafirs.
1704	Foundation of Dutch Reformed church, near government gardens, laid.
1705	Thirty or forty farmers, each with a Hottentot servant, proceed northward to explore the country (probably the Hantam and Roggeveld). Landdrost Staremborg leads an expedition into Namaqualand. Captain Dampier, in the <i>St. George</i> , homeward-bound, touches at Table Bay. Number of free burghers estimated at 450. In Kolben's prospect of the Cape, about this date, the government gardens, old jetty, near castle, Dutch Reformed church, and castle appear.

A.D. 1705	Two gallows occupy a prominent position. Kolben, the traveler, lands in Cape Town, 11th June. The supply of water appears to have been pretty much the same as at present. "The stream from the Table Hill turns a mill belonging to the company, from thence it passes through long pipes to the square or place Des Armes, between the fortress and Cape Town, where through pumps it plentifully supplies both the town and fortress with the most delicious water for drinking; it discharges itself into the harbor" (present ditch now partly filled up, near commissariat department).
1706	Complaints reach home accusing Governor A. van der Stell of various acts of tyranny, oppression, and peculation. Earthen envelope to castle first formed.
1707	Governor W. A. van der Stell recalled and disgraced for various acts of tyranny and jobbing. The honorable company's servants forbidden to traffic in corn, wine, and cattle. Tide ebbs and flows seven times in Table Bay, between 8 and 10 a.m. Variation of compass 11° 15' west, according to Kolben. Epidemic rages among slaves.
1708	The Cape colony included at this date the present divisions of Cape, Malmesbury, Paarl, Stellenbosch, and parts of Caledon and Tulbagh; the stock consists of 130,000 sheep, 20,000 head of cattle, 2,000 slaves. False Bay surveyed by order of Governor van Asseburg. A deputation of Namaqua chiefs wait on Governor van Asseburg.
1710	The village of Stellenbosch destroyed by fire. A mighty wind blew the waters of False Bay in great floods up the country. When the waters retreated, thousands of bushels of fish were found on dry land.
1712	Old Simon van der Stell dies and is buried with great pomp; his monument will probably be found amongst those taken down in Dutch Reformed church.
1713	Small-pox very destructive at Cape, especially to the aborigines. Kolben leaves the Cape.
1714	About this period Constantia farm begins to get celebrated for its wines. Marquis de Chavonnes, a Huguenot French nobleman, governor to 1724.
1715	The statutes of India, collected by Dutch government towards the end of 17th century, applied to the Cape.
1719	Captain G. van der Schelling reaches the Cape from Algoa Bay. Chavonne battery first built.
1721	Expedition left Cape Town to establish a port at Natal; cannot find the place, and proceed to Algoa Bay, 14th February. Steeple of Dutch Reformed church erected.
1722	Church at Stellenbosch burnt.
1724	An attempt to introduce woolled sheep made by Batavian government.
1725	Sale of bread and cattle first made free at Cape.
1726	An order to discontinue the breeding of woolled sheep received by Jan de la Fontaine, acting governor, from the Council of Seventeen.
1737	20th May.—The <i>Yperde</i> , <i>Goudman</i> , <i>Flora</i> , <i>Paddenburg</i> , <i>Westerwyk</i> , <i>Buys</i> , <i>Duynbeek</i> , <i>Redewys</i> , East India Company's ships, wrecked in Table Bay during a fierce gale, 207 lives lost. The Dutch East India Company order their vessels to winter in Simon's Bay, and large buildings erected there. In consequence of the murder of some hunters, licenses no longer granted to hunt in the Kafir country.

A.D.	
1739	5th and 7th September.—Earthquakes at Cape. First Moravian mission formed by G. Schmidt, on site of present Genadendal, existed till 1744. Gamtoos River fixed as the colonial boundary to the east.
1742	Farmers generally extended into the Roggeveld, Nieuweveld, and Sneeuwberg country.
1743	Baron Imhoff, 27th governor-general of Dutch India, arrives at Cape, and is solemnly installed at the castle with great ceremony, 21st June. Dutch Reformed church at Waveren built.
1744	Commander Anson, in the <i>Centurion</i> , arrives in Table Bay on his voyage homeward. Loan places or annual tenures at will of government have extended as far north as the north side of Piketberg..
1745	Division of Swellendam formed, called after Hendrik Swellengrebel, governor from 1739 to 1751.
1751	La Caille arrives at Cape to measure arc of meridian; completes his measurements in 1753. La Caille lodged at No. 2, Strand-street, now Messrs. Searight's store; his observatory was in the back court, north-west side. The town now extends east as far as Plein-street. Ryk van Tulbagh, formerly a private soldier, appointed governor, 20th March, and remains governor twenty years. Ryk had only one eye, but he appears to have been an excellent, warm-hearted old fellow.
1754	A baaken erected in Algoa Bay, by the Dutch East India Company, near the Swartkops River.
1755	July 17.— <i>Doddington</i> , East Indiaman, lost on Doddington Rock, near Bird Island, Algoa Bay. Small-pox in Cape. Foundation-stone of town-hall laid by Barend D'Artoys, and new burgher guard, November 18.
1755—6	Fortifications first erected in Muizenberg Pass.
1760	The Cape colony now consists of divisions of Cape, Stellenbosch, and Swellendam.
1761	Hoppe's expedition to the north sent out by Governor van Tulbagh. Mr. Dessin bequeathed his valuable library of nearly 5,000 volumes, and some choice old paintings, to form nucleus of a public library, in trust to Dutch Reformed church.
1762	May 2.—C. Rykvoet's report to R. van Tulbagh, on the Namaqua copper mines.
1766	Earthquake at Cape, in July. Commodore Byron, in the <i>Dolphin</i> , arrives in Table Bay, on his voyage homeward-bound, Feb. 13. Small-pox at Cape.
1767	Small-pox and measles epidemic at Cape.
1768	Captain Wallis, circumnavigator, arrives in Table Bay in the <i>Dolphin</i> , 4th Feb. Captain Carteret, circumnavigator, arrives in Table Bay, 28th Nov.
1771	Baron van Plettenberg appointed governor, Aug. 12. Old Ryk van Tulbagh dies, much regretted. Captain Cook, in the <i>Endeavor</i> , arrives in Table Bay, on his first voyage homeward-bound. Bernardin St. Pierre, author of "Paul and Virginia," visits the Cape.
1772	Mason, deputed by directors of new Botanic Gardens at Kew, leaves, until 1774, for the Cape, collecting plants. King of Madura confined by Dutch East India Company on Robben Island. Sparrman, the traveler, arrives in Cape Town, and travels till March, 1776. Captain Cook, outward-bound on his second voyage, arrives in Table Bay. Thunberg, naturalist and traveler, arrives in Table Bay.

A. D. 1772	The leases of several farms on the Zwartkop's River canceled, as being outside the colonial boundary; re-occupied in 1775. Foundation of new hospital, now main barracks, laid by Governor van Plettenberg. The old hospital stood opposite present Dutch Reformed church.
1773	Wreck of <i>Jonge Thomas</i> , and heroic rescue of crew by Woltemade, who perishes—May 29.
1774	Nelson, then a junior officer, touched at the Cape on his way to the East Indies.
1774 to 1777	Great commandoes against Bushmen; in three last commandoes 503 Bushmen killed and 241 prisoners taken; one boer killed.
1776	Lieut.-Governor Henning tries to introduce Spanish sheep into the colony, but was frustrated, says Cook, by the people, who thought the fat of the native breed could not be compensated by wool. The <i>Resolution</i> , Captain Cook, and <i>Discovery</i> , Captain Clerke, outward-bound, arrive in Table Bay on their third voyage.
1777 to 1779	Paterson and Colonel Gordon penetrate north to the Orange River, so named by the latter.
1778	Governor van Plettenberg makes a journey into the interior, and erects a baaken on the Zeekoe River, a few miles west of present town of Colesberg.
1779	Demand of redress of grievances by the Cape burghers from the home government. Commando against Bushmen.
1780	By a deed of burghership granted this year to J. H. Gous, a tailor, formerly a soldier, "He is graciously allowed to practice his craft as a tailor, but shall not be allowed to abandon the same, or adopt any other mode of living, but when it may be deemed necessary to go back into his old capacity and pay, and be transported hence, if thought fit." English fleet, under Commander Johnstone, intend to invade the Cape, meet the French fleet, under Admiral Suffren, at St. Jago. Suffren, after the fight, arrives at Table Bay, and puts it in a state of defence. Commander Johnstone captures a Dutch fleet in Saldanha Bay. Cango caves, in division of Oudtshoorn, discovered by a boer hunting in the mountains. The lines from Fort Knokke to Zonnebloem constructed by the French forces in Admiral Suffren's fleet. Great Fish River declared colonial boundary to the east. Andrew L. Koluer, first pastor of Lutheran church, Strand-street. Commando against Kafirs. First whale fishery established.
1781	Commander Jarsveld's report on the celebrated "tobacco" commando against the Kafirs—July 20. Admiral Sonnerat at the Cape. Amsterdam battery built. Martin Melck, the founder of the Lutheran church, Strand-street, dies—23rd July.
1782	The French naturalist Le Vaillant arrives at the Cape, April; travels till 1785. Governor van Plettenberg proclaims a paper currency—30th April. Wreck of the East Indiaman <i>Grosvenor</i> on the coast of Kaffraria, between the Uzimvubo and Uzimculu Rivers. Many of the female passengers taken as wives by the natives, from whom have descended the late chief Daapa, the Queen Nonibi, and many other Kafir chiefs—4th August. French troops arrive at Cape to strengthen garrison. The burghers J. and F. Revs pray for permission to build a bridge over Berg River; refused, on the ground of the injury it would do the pontoon-keepers.
1782 to 1786	Many of present buildings in the castle reconstructed and rebuilt during this period (date on key-stone of centre archway, 1782) by Governors van Plettenberg and van der Graaff.



A.D. 1783	Publication of <i>Nederlandsch Afrika</i> contains severe strictures on government of Cape. Old church-yard at Stellenbosch sold, in ten lots, for 10,630 florins.
1785	Cornelius van der Graaff governor—Feb. 14. The East Indiaman <i>Pigot</i> puts into Algoa Bay and lands some of her passengers, who travel overland to Cape Town. This event causes the formation of the division of Graaff-Reinet, "to prevent any foreigners from settling at the Baai Algoa." Delegates sent home to represent grievances of the burghers to the government.
1786	Division of Graaff-Reinet formed and town founded. Adult males in colony, 3,238. Government magazine at Mossel Bay built. Two troops of burgher dragoons formed at Graaff-Reinet.
1790	Expedition in search of the crew of the <i>Grosvenor</i> starts, under the command of J. van Reenen—Aug. 24, and reaches the wreck on the 15th Nov.
1791	The circumnavigator Vancouver touches at Simon's Town; finds variation of compass 25° 40' west. Commission appointed by the Stadtholder of United Provinces to inquire into abuses of Dutch Company's settlements.
1792	Moravian missions renewed at Genadendal. Great commando against Bushmen. Slaves professing the christian religion declared admissible to communion of the church.
1793	One flock of merino sheep introduced into the Cape by Colonel Gordon, and sold after his death to some settlers on their way to New South Wales, where they formed the origin of the flocks of the enterprising J. McArthur. Commissioners Nederburgh and Frykenius arrive from Holland to inquire into abuses and grievances of government. Great commando against marauding Hottentots. Lombard Bank established to prevent usury, there being a dearth in the money market.
1794	The commission leave the Cape for Java, investing with their powers Mynheer Sluysken, who subsequently surrendered the colony to the English fleet. The farm Constantia has to deliver, annually, to the government sixty half-aums of wine, at twenty-five rixdollars each.
1795	Great dissatisfaction among the boers of Graaff-Reinet and Swellendam; the landdrosts of both these divisions expelled, and thrust beyond the boundaries of the districts; a free republic declared at Swellendam. Republic of Seven United Provinces overturned by the French. Admiral Elphinstone and General Craig arrive with a fleet in False Bay, force the Muizenburg passes, and advance upon Cape Town—June. Cape capitulates to the English—Sept. 16. General Craig first English governor at the Cape.
1796	General Craig builds the batteries on Devil's Hill and Craig's Tower. Fort Frederick, Algoa Bay, built. First native regiment of Hottentots raised by General Craig. Duke of Wellington, then Lieut.-Colonel Wellesley, at the Cape; lodged in the house now Solomon's printing office. Ship <i>Hercules</i> lost near mouth of Beka. The Graaff-Reinet boers expel the landdrost, Mr. Bresler, sent them by Sir J. Craig. Perceval travels in Cape. About this time, the Hottentot Afrikander murders his master, Pinnaar, in the Hantam, and flies with a party of runaway slaves and banditti to the Orange River, where, for many years, he carries on a system of marauding on the Korannas and other tribes living there; drives the Korannas, under Barend Barends,

A.D. 1796	far to the eastward; where, collected by the missionary Anderson, they formed the nucleus of the present Griqua community. The present Jonker Afrikander is the grandson of this Afrikander. Commando against Bushmen.
1797	Earl Macartney, appointed governor of the Cape colony ("De Oude Edelman" of the Dutch boers), arrives—4th May. The traveler Barrow arrives with Lord Macartney, and travels through the colony until 1799. Conrad Buys, a rebel colonist, takes refuge with chief Gaika, and marries his mother. Kafir chief Gaika attacks the chief Tslambie, his guardian, and takes him prisoner; the retainers of Tslambie cross the Fish River and take up their abode in the Zuurveld. About this time, a portion of the Tslambie tribe of Kafirs migrate to the north, towards the Orange River, and being driven south again by the attacks of Mantatee, Basutu, and other tribes, their descendants now form the Praamberg and Schietfontein Kafirs, being located there since 1829. Commando against Bushmen in the Cold Bokkeveld. Bath-house at Caledon built.
1798	Population of colony, not including army and navy, declared to be 21,746 whites, 25,754 slaves, 14,447 Hottentots; total, 61,947. Semple travels in Cape colony. The colonial boundary proclaimed by Lord Macartney to be the Great Fish River, Tarka, Bamboesberg, and Zuurbergen, to the Plettenberg baaken; and along the south edge of Bushmanland to the Kamiesberg; and along the Buffel's River to the Atlantic. Revolt of Graaff-Reinet boers suppressed by General Dundas. Kafirs and Hottentots attack the boers in the Zuurveld, and penetrate as far east as Plettenberg Bay and the Cayman's River, near George. Lieutenant Chumney and party of 81st regiment cut off by the Kafirs, near Bosjesman's River. The Earl of Mornington, after Marquis Wellesley, governor-general of India, visits the Cape. Colonel Lacerda crosses Africa from the west to east coast. The burgher senate refuse the use of the town-hall to the British governor, to celebrate the king's birthday—May 30.
1799	Missionaries Van der Kemp and Kicherer arrive at Cape—Feb. H.M. ship <i>Sceptre</i> , <i>Oldenburg</i> , Danish man-of-war, and seven other vessels driven ashore at Table Bay. First foundation of London Missionary Society in the Cape. The missionary Van der Kemp takes up his abode at Gaika's kraal, then situated near present site of Fort Beaufort; leaves it shortly after, and proceeds to Graaff-Reinet.
1800	Bastard Hottentots, called Griquas, first collected from roaming along the northern deserts of the colony by the missionary Anderson, and settled down about the junction of the Kei and the Gariep. <i>Government Gazette</i> first established. Freemasons' lodge "De Goede Trouw" founded. Wall built round government gardens by governor Sir G. Young.
1801	Peace of Amiens; the Cape to be restored to the Batavian republic. Messrs. Truter and Somerville make a journey into Betjouanaland, and are the first European visitors to the Betjouanas. Mission station amongst the Bushmen on the Zak River, called De Oude Kerk, formed by the missionary Kicherer; abandoned 1806. Village of Zwartland, now Malmesbury, founded. First printing office. Lease granted to Walker and Robertson; withdrawn a year after, and all printing put under government superintendence. First paper money issued under British government.

A. D. 1802	First establishment of the Hottentot mission at Bethelsdorp, under Van der Kemp—7th March. Dr. Lichtenstein arrives in Cape Town in December, and travels in interior till 1805; dies at Berlin, 1858. Freemasons' lodge, Bouquet-street, built, J. Thibault architect. Commando against Bushmen and Kafirs in Graaff-Reinet district, under Major Sherlock.
1803	Cape evacuated by the English, in compliance with an article of the peace of Amiens. General Janssens governor, and Van der Mist commissi- oner-general—Feb. 19; Batavian flag hoisted—21st. Vaccine committee first formed. Treaty between General Janssens and Chief Gaika. General Janssens at Algoa Bay, meets with Kafirs and Hottentot chief, Klaas Stuurman—8th May. A monthly post established to Algoa Bay—June 13.
1804	Great fire at Stellenbosch. Districts of Tulbagh and Uitenhage formed. General Janssens changes name of mission station at Baviaan's Kloof to Genadendal. First establishment of the institution "Tot nut van't Algemeen." Stephanus, a foreign impostor, flies from Cape Town, for forgery, and takes refuge amongst the Koranna tribes, on the Orange River, where he passes for a prophet, and builds a church a few miles east of the junction of Hartebest and Orange Rivers; afterwards murdered by the natives.  <i>Fourth Period.—From second capture of the Cape to 1858.</i>
1806	Signal given that an English fleet is in sight—Jan. 4. Battle of Blaauwberg—Jan. 8. Cape Town capitulates to the English forces under Sir D. Baird—Jan. 10. Final capitulation of General Janssens—Jan. 27. W. T. van Reynveld appointed chief civil magistrate. Formation of a corps of Hottentot infantry, afterwards called the Cape Mounted Rifles. London Missionary Society first established missions beyond the Orange River. Zak River mission station abandoned.
1807	Lord Caledon appointed governor—May 22. Small-pox appears in June; patients removed to Paarden Island. Last cargo of slaves landed at Cape. The Buitenkant the outside limit of the town to the south-east.
1808	Dr. Cowan and Captain Donovan leave Cape on a journey into the interior; they reach the Malapo River, near present Kuruman, and are supposed now to have died of fever near the Limpopo, although, at the time, thought to have been murdered by native tribes. Slave-trade abolished by British parliament. Great visitation of locusts in Cape colony. Village at Jan Dissel's Vlei, now Clanwilliam, first formed Groenekloof or Mamre mission station founded.
1809	Severe shock of earthquake at the Cape—Dec. 4. Colonel Collins crosses Stormberg Spruit on his tour of exploration, and discovers the Caledon and Kraai Rivers (called by him the Grey River), in present Albert division; he also reports on the Outeniqua and Knysna forests. Lord Caledon's proclamation as to the unlawfulness of retaining Hottentot children as apprentices.
1810	Dr. Burchill lands at the Cape—Nov. 26, and travels till 1814. The New Cut, present Capel-ditch, first formed, to prevent old water-course from encroaching on the Buitenkant.
1811	Shocks of earthquake at Cape—Jan. 2 and June 10. Circuit courts first established—May 12. District of George formed. Sir J. Cradock, afterwards Lord Howden, governor—July.

A. D. 1811	Variation of compass at Klaarwater, 27° W. Death of Dr. van der Kemp. Great comet visible. Village of Zwarteberg, now Caledon, founded. Commando under Colonel Graham assembled—Oct. 8. Vaccine institution formed—Dec. 12. Kafirs expelled the Zuurberg, and driven beyond the Great Fish River. Death of the elder Stockenstrom, killed by the Kafirs in the Zuurberg—Dec 28. British Freemasons' Lodge, No. 409, constituted. Naval dock-yard transferred from Cape Town to Simon's Town.
1812	Study of English language recommended by proclamation—Feb. Small-pox at Cape June; persons not being vaccinated prohibited to appear in public. Head-quarters of Cape Corps in the Zuurveld to be called Graham's Town—Aug. 14. Mr. J. F. Reitz commences breeding Spanish sheep at Zoetendalsvlei, near Cape L'Agulhas. Missionary Campbell's first journey in the interior. Present market built by French prisoners. Government express their intention to grant lands on perpetual quitrent—Oct. 16.
1813	Riding over Grand Parade, Cape Town, prohibited. Tenders for the erection of a drostdy-house and gaol, Graham's Town, called for. Village of Zwarteberg to be called Caledon. Mission station at Pacaltsdorp established. Sub-drostdys of Cradock and Clanwilliam established. Spanish wool from interior to enter Cape Town market duty free.
1814	The celebrated Irish comedian, Tyrone Power, at this period serves in the commissariat department at the Cape. Zuurveld to be called Albany—Jan. 7. Village at Jan Dissel's Vallei to be called Clanwilliam—Jan. 21. Sub-district of Graaff-Reinet to be called Cradock. Lord C. Somerset appointed governor of colony—April 6. New church at Simon's Town to be called St. George's. Church at Uitenhage commenced. Mission station at Steinkopf, or Kookfontein, in Little Namaqualand, founded by London Missionary Society.
1815	Cape of Good Hope definitely ceded to England by treaty of Paris. Establishment of present court of justice—Jan. 19. <i>Arniston</i> , East Indiaman, 1,500 tons, from Ceylon to England, lost on Cape L'Agulhas; 344 persons, including Lord and Lady Molesworth, perish—30th May. Dr. Latrobe, traveler, arrives in Cape—Dec. 24. Boer rebellion in Graaff-Reinet district, near Baviaan's River.
1816	Five boers hanged for rebellion at Van Aardt's Post, Great Fish River. Military post at Roodewal established. First establishment of Wesleyan missions in South Africa. Town of Worcester founded. The Knysna harbor entered by H.M.S. <i>Podargus</i> . The London missionary Williams establishes a station at the chief Gaika's kraal, near Fort Beaufort. 9,623 lbs. of wool exported from Cape colony. Wesleyan mission in the Kamiesberg founded. Present court of justice built.
1817	Meeting and treaty between the governor, Lord C. Somerset, and Kafir chief Gaika—April 2. Mission station of Kuruman founded by Rev. R. Moffat—June 17. Leper institution of "Hemel en Aarde" founded.
1818	Foundation of Lutheran church laid. War between Kafir chief Gaika and the Tslambie tribe of Kafirs. Great battle between Gaika and Tslambies, on the Debe Flats; the former defeated, and flees to the mountains; the English government takes the part of Gaika.



A.D. 1818	<p>Moravian mission station at Enon, in the Zuurberg, founded. Somerset Hospital founded—July 6. Creation of sub-drostdy of Beaufort West—November 27. Second journey of the missionary Campbell along the Orange River to Namaqualand, till 1820. Village founded at Hooge Vlakte, now town of Beaufort. Death of the missionary Williams at the old school, near Fort Beaufort. The desolating wars of the Zulu king, Chaka, commence about this period. Great commando under Colonel Brereton enters Kafirland—Dec.</p>
1819	<p>Invasion of the colony by the Tslambie and Amagonubi Kafirs, who penetrate as far as Uitenhage—Feb. Proclamation of Lord C. Somerset, offering grants of land to settlers east of the Bosjesman's River—March 29. Attack on Graham's Town by the Kafirs, under the prophet Makanna, or Lynx, and Dushani, who are repulsed by the British forces under Colonel Wilshire—April 22. £50,000 granted by British legislature to send colonists to eastern frontier of Cape colony—July. Commando under Colonel Wilshire scour Kafirland; Makanna surrenders himself—Aug. 15. Country between Kieskamma and Fish Rivers declared a neutral territory. Country between the Koonap, Kat, and Great Fish Rivers added to the colony. Foundation laid of Wesleyan chapel, Burg-street. Military posts first established at Fort Beaufort and Fort Wilshire. First stone of Commercial Exchange laid—Sept. 25. Treaty between Lord C. Somerset and Gaika chiefs—Oct. 15. Commisariat farm established on site of present town of Somerset East. The Hottentot robber Afrikander, converted to Christianity by the missionary Moffat, visits Cape Town. Makanna and the Hottentot chief D. Stuurman sent to Robben Island; the former perishes in trying to escape—Dec. 25. Post office revenue this year, £987 6s 4d.</p>
1820	<p>British settlers arrive in Algoa Bay—April 20. Fair established at Beaufort West for the benefit of the tribes north of Orange River. T. Pringle, the poet, and party, settle on the Baviaan's River, Glenlynden. Cholera at Mauritius; great alarm prevails in Cape Town, and vessels put in quarantine. Bathurst made seat of magistracy for Albany—Oct. 13. District of Albany formed. Lord C. Somerset proceeds to England, leaving Sir R. Donkin as lieutenant-governor. Royal Observatory at Cape founded—Oct. 20. Town of Port Elizabeth founded by Sir R. Donkin; it consists of a small temporary barrack, a few huts, besides the original farm-house of the boer Hartman—population, thirty-five souls. The Kafir chief Moselikatze flees before Chaka over the Drakensberg into the present Free State; he then attacks and exterminates several of the native Lehoya and other Betjouana tribes dwelling there, driving the Amaquani Zulus, under Matuana, and the Amatlubi Fingoes, under Pacarita, on the Basutu tribes. The Basutu chief Moshesh kills Pacarita and drives Matuana to the south, who afterwards attacks the Tambookies, and is conquered by the British forces under Major Dundas, in 1828.</p>
1821	<p>The Griquas separate into three distinct tribes, under the chiefs Adam Kok, Andreas Waterboer, and Barend Barends. Annual Kafir fair established at Fort Wilshire—July 26. Hope Lodge, freemasons, constituted. Marryatt's signals established on Lion's Rump and at Knysna; flag-staff previously on Lion's Head. Military village of Frederickburg founded; abandoned 1823. South African Public Library founded at Cape Town.</p>

A. D. 1821	Lord C. Somerset returns to the Cape. Military survey of frontier commenced and continued till 1825, under Lieutenants Pettingal and Rivers, R.E., Captain Bonamy, 6th regiment, Lieutenant Stretch, &c.
1822	Division of Tulbagh receives the name of Worcester. Establishment of savings' bank. English language proclaimed to be used in all judicial proceedings, after 1827, in official acts, from 1825, and in all documents issued from colonial offices, in 1828. Mission station at Philippolis founded. A British agent, Mr. Melville, appointed to reside among the tribes north of the Orange River, at Griqua Town. Seat of magistracy for Albany restored to Graham's Town—Feb. 8. Tremendous floods and storms in the eastern part of colony; destroy the crops of Albany settlers—July. 200,000 rixdollars granted by government on a loan—Aug. Kafir chief Macomo allowed by Lord C. Somerset to reoccupy a portion of the neutral territory, now the Kat River settlement. Continual depredations by Bushmen along the northern frontiers of the colony.
1823	First Wesleyan mission in Kafirland founded at Wesleyville. Mantatees, flying before Moselikatze, attack Latakoo—June 21. They retreat to the north, under Sebituane, and settle about Linyanti and the Zambezi, where they are first visited by Dr. Livingstone in 1850. Mr. G. Thompson, traveler, visits Betjouanaland, and brings first news of Mantatee invasion to the colony. Annual fair established at Slingersfontein, in the Hantam. Great confusion existing amongst the Betjouana tribes north of the Orange River, owing to the wars between Moselikatze, Chaka, and other native chiefs. Proclamation for regulation of medical practitioners—Sept. Major, the present General, Somerset attacks Macomo's kraals, and captures 7,000 head of cattle—Dec. 5.
1824	The first number of <i>South African Commercial Advertiser</i> , the first Cape newspaper, published by G. Greig,—Jan. 7. Population of Cape colony, 48,699 whites, 1,989 free blacks, 1,770 negro apprentices, and 23,198 slaves; total, 85,656. Lieut. Farewell, King, and party settle at Natal. Lighthouse erected on Green Point first lighted—April 12. Moravian mission of Elim established. <i>South African Journal</i> , the first literary journal in South Africa, published under the joint editorship of T. Pringle and J. Fairbairn. The Basutu chief Moshesh fixes his residence at Thaba Bosigo. Mr. G. Thompson penetrates north from the Hantam to the Orange River, and explores part of its course. Great visitation of locusts. Kafir fairs to be held at Fort Wilshire three times a week. Naval buildings at Knysna destroyed by fire—Nov. 13. The Bastard chief Africaner commences his inroads on the Damara tribes.
1825	The South African Literary Society suppressed by Lord C. Somerset. Commission of inquiry into grievances of Albany settlers make their report—May 25. Districts of Somerset and Cradock formed. The Korannas and Bergenaars, vagrant Hottentot tribes living along the Orange River, under Conrad Buys and other outlawed boers, attack the Basutus. Attack by a commando under Colonel Somerset on Botman's kraal. Conspiracy of slaves in Bokkeveld, and murder of Van der Merwe. First museum established,—June 10. Corner-stone of observatory laid—Aug. 13. Town of Somerset founded.
1826	Sir R. Bourke lieutenant-governor—February. Lord C. Somerset leaves the colony—May 5.

A. D. 1826	A. G. Bain and Biddulph, travelers, penetrate north nearly to Kolobeng. 4,192 lbs. of sheep wool exported from Cape. Wesleyan mission station at Mount Coke, Kafirland, established.
1827	About this year the Bushmen of the Nieuweveldt retire to the desert country near the Orange River. <i>South African Commercial Advertiser</i> stopped by an order of the governor—10th March; re-established 1828. Expedition of Cowan and Green, travelers; they reach Delagoa Bay from the colony; both travelers perish there of fever—April, 1829. Great fight between the Tambookies and Fetcani, under Matuana, near the mountain Hangklip, in present division of Queen's Town—Aug. 27. Bishop of Calcutta, first Protestant prelate who ever visited the Cape, consecrates English burial-ground—Oct. 13. Royal charter for appointment of judges—Dec. 10. Ordinance dissolving burgher senate—Dec. 26.
1828	Foundation of St. Andrew's (Scotch) church, Somerset-road—May 28. Fifteenth ordinance passed, putting all free persons of color on same footing as European—July 17. Expedition of Major Dundas along the coast of Kafirland. The Fetcani, under Matuana, attack the Tambookies and Amageleka Kafirs, and are defeated near the sources of the Bashee by a colonial force, under Major Dundas—Aug. 26. Sir Lowry Cole appointed governor of Cape—Sept. 14. The Zulu tyrant Chaka killed by Dingaan—Sept. 23. Messenger from Gaika arrives in Cape Town—Nov. 5. Shiloh mission station founded. A. Stockenstrom appointed commissioner-general of eastern frontier.
1829	Death of Kafir chief Gaika. Travels of Schoon and Mc Luckie, and of Missionary Archbell, into the interior. They penetrate into the country now the Transvaal Republic. Circulating library of South African Library established—March 20. Foundation of Rhenish mission in Cape colony. Macómo and his tribe ejected from the Kat River. Kat River settlement founded by Sir L. Cole. South African College opened,—Oct. 1. Name of village of Zwartland changed to Malmesbury. Moselikatze visited at his residence in the Magaliesberg, by the missionaries Moffat and Archbell.
1830	4,500 lbs. of wool exported this year from Port Elizabeth. Roman Catholic relief ordinance issued—Jan. 13. Great fire amongst the woods at Wynberg. Horse sickness—March 11. Foundation-stone of St. George's church laid by His Excellency Sir L. Cole, and old name of Burg-street changed to St. George's-street—March 23. Great fire on Table Mountain—May. New organ presented to Dutch Reformed church, by Jan Hoets; cost £1,500. Wreck of the <i>L'Eole</i> , French ship, near mouth of Bashee. Basutus under Moshesh attack and exterminate a Griqua commando under Hendrick Hendricks, near Thaba Bosigo; the latter alone escapes. Total exports of wool from the colony, 33,280 lbs.; post office revenue £3,752. Commando under Colonel Somerset enters Kafirland. Chief Seko killed—June. Two large masses of rock fall from Table Mountain—June 6. <i>Lady Holland</i> , East Indiaman, wrecked on Dassen Island. London mission station in Kat River settlement founded. Village of Colesberg founded. French missionaries first arrive in South Africa. Establishment of Rhenish mission in South Africa, at Stellenbosch and Wupperthal. Sir Lowry's Pass, Hottentots' Holland mountain, opened—July 6. Attack of Grikwas on Moselikatze, near Mosega, and their defeat.

A.D. 1831	<p>New Wesleyan chapel, Cape Town, opened 13th Feb. The Rev. S. Kay travels in Kafirland. Death of Lord C. Somerset at Brighton—Feb. 20. Houw Hoek Pass opened—April 13. St. George's-street lighted by subscription—April 23. The learned Brahmin Rammohin Roy visits Cape Town—Nov. 17. Savings' bank opened—Dec. Great alarm amongst the frontier boers, caused by report that the Kat River Hottentots were about to attack them—Dec. 2. South African Fire and Life Assurance Company established. Moselikatze drives the Baharutsi from Mosega and establishes his kraal there. <i>Graham's Town Journal</i> established—Dec. 30.</p>
1832	<p>Rhenish mission station of Ebenezer established. Vice-Admiralty-court appointed at the Cape. Foundation-stone of present institution "Tot Not van't Algemeen" laid—Oct. 3.</p>
1833	<p>The chief Tyali driven out of the Mancazana valley and settled on the Chumie, near the site of present town of Alice. First establishment of French missions among the Basutus under Casalis, Arbousset, and Gosselin. German mission stations founded at Natal. The appointment of commissioner-general of eastern frontier abolished. Orphan chamber abolished; duties to be performed by master of supreme court. Commando from the Hantam underfield-commandant Redlinghuys, against the marauding Korannas, near the Orange River—Sept. 7.</p>
1834	<p>Sir B. D'Urban appointed governor of Cape. Sir J. Herschel arrives at Cape—Jan. 17. Berlin mission station at Bethany founded. Dr. A. Smith and exploring party leave Cape Town—July. South African Association for Administration of Estates established. Captain Gardiner sets out on his travels in Zulu country—Dec. Slavery abolished in Cape—Dec. 1. Slaves to be apprenticed for four years. Kafir chief Xo-Xo wounded by patrol—Dec. 10. Moshesh attacks the Tambookie Kafirs near Shiloh. Treaty between Sir B. D Urban and chief A. Waterboer—Dec. 11. Outbreak of fourth Kafir war, and invasion of the colony by the Gaika and Tslambie tribes—Dec. 23. In one week 40 farmers murdered, 450 farm-houses burnt, 4,000 horses, 100,000 head of cattle, and 150,000 sheep carried off.</p>
1835	<p>Kafirs overrun the eastern frontier. Sir H. Smith, then Colonel Smith, arrives in Graham's Town in six days overland from Cape Town—Jan. 7. Fort Wilshire evacuated by British troops and burnt by Kafirs. Kafir Drift post abandoned and burnt. Captain Gardiner visits Dingaan's kraal—Feb. 10. Amakosa Kafirs attack Morosi, a Basutu chief, near Orange River. Death of the Kafir chief Hintza, killed by Mr. R. Southey in attempting to escape from his escort—May 21. Pingoos released from slavery and brought into colony. Dispatch received from Dr. A. Smith and exploring party, announcing their arrival at Moselikatze's kraal—June 10. Great commando under Colonel Smith sweeps Kafirland; he establishes his head-quarters at King William's Town. Shock of earthquake—Sept. 9. Mission station of Nisbet Bath destroyed by Africander; re-occupied by Wesleyan missionaries. Treaty of peace with Kafir chiefs signed, by which chiefs and people agree to become subjects of Great Britain. Great hurricane at Stellenbosch—Sept. 30. Shock of earthquake at Cape—Nov. 11. Province of Queen Adelaide, including present British Kaffraria and division of Victoria, formed.</p>



A.D. 1835	Frontier of colony to be the Great Kei River. Date of famous dispatch from Lord Glenelg to Sir B. D'Urban, disavowing his measures—Dec. 26.
1836	Clanwilliam declared a separate division. Shipwreck of <i>Doncaster</i> on Cape L'Agulhas—July 23. Sir A. Stockenstrom appointed lieutenant-governor—July 28. Emigration of Dutch boers under P. Retief commences. First party under Treichardt sets off; reaches Delagoa Bay, 1838. First attack of Moselikatze on emigrant boers, near Coque's Drift, Vaal River—Aug. 1. Ordinance establishing municipal boards in towns and villages of colony—Aug. 15. Second attack of Moselikatze on emigrant boers, near Vet River—Oct. 2. Shock of earthquake felt in Piketberg—Dec. 4. Military post at Fort Armstrong, built. Drostdy-house at Graham's Town converted into military barracks. Military post established at Fort Peddie. Reversal of D'Urban policy; province of Queen Adelaide given back to Kafirs, and also greater part of neutral territory; boundary to be the Great Fish River, Tarka, and Stormberg Spruit to the Orange River—Dec. 5. Old Dutch Reformed church pulled down, Captain Harris sets out on his expedition north of Vaal River. 373,203 lbs. of wool exported from colony.
1837	Districts of Cradock and Colesberg erected into separate and independent divisions—Feb. 8. Mosega, Moselikatze's residence, attacked by the emigrant boers, who destroy it. Last attack of emigrant boers on Moselikatze—Dec.; he flies to the north, and takes refuge in the country north of Malappo mountains, in lat. 20°. Colonel Lewis, R.E., makes his report on frontier line of defence. Sir J. Alexander travels from the Cape northward, and reaches the country of the Damaras. Legislative council formed. Main barracks and martello tower at Fort Beaufort built. Cape of Good Hope Bank established.
1838	Sir G. Napier appointed governor—Jan. 22. Authority granted for commencing new frontier line of defence from the Tarka post to the sea, as proposed by Colonel Lewis, R.E. Backhouse, traveler, lands in Cape—Jan. 27. Pieter Retief, chief of the emigrant boers, with his followers, murdered by the Zulu king Dingaan, at his kraal—Feb. 4. Defeat of the emigrant boers under Uys and Potgieter by the Zulus, near Bloed River, a branch of the Utugela—April. Post at Mancazana built; burnt by Kafirs in 1846. Prince of Orange at Cape—May 8. Village of Wellington founded. <i>Northumberland</i> , East Indiaman, lost off Cape L'Agulhas—Aug. 25. Large aerolites fell near Patatasfontein, Great Karroo—Oct. 13. Major Chartres' expedition to Natal—Nov. 14; leaves a garrison of 72nd regiment there. Queen's road from Graham's Town to Fort Beaufort opened. New military post at Fort Brown, formerly Hermanus Kraal, commenced. Slavery at Cape finally abolished—Dec. 1. Great battle between the emigrant boers under Pretorius, and Dingaan, near Umkinglove; Dingaan defeated, and flies to the mountains—Dec. 16. South African Bank, Cape of Good Hope Marine Assurance and Protecteur Assurance Companies, and Board of Executors established. Eastern Province Bank established.
1839	English church at Wynberg built. Cape Town and Green Point municipality formed—Feb. 12. Dr. Innes appointed first superintendent-general of education—May 23. Ordinance for the creation of a municipal board for Cape Town and its vicinity.

A. D. 1839	Sir A. Stockenstrom ceases to be lieutenant-governor; succeeded by Colonel J. Hare—Aug. 22. Military post at Double Drift commenced; abandoned in 1848. Main barracks and martello tower at Fort Beaufort built. Military post at Eland's River, near Seymour, built. Eastern Province Fire Insurance Company established. New system of police introduced. New military hospital, Cape Town, commenced.
1840	The steamer <i>Good Hope</i> , the first coasting steamer running on the Cape coast, lost on the Zitzekamma coast—Feb. Panda, by assistance of emigrant boers, defeats his brother Dingaan, and is proclaimed by them paramount chief of the Zulus—Feb. 14. Dingaan flees towards Delagoa Bay, where he is murdered. Fort Brown bridge over Great Fish River commenced; completed 1848. Bridge over Kat River, at Fort Beaufort, commenced; completed 1843. Commencement of measurement of arc of meridian by Mr. Maclear—Sept. 2. A large rhinoceros killed near Cometjies Post. A lion killed near chief Stock's kraal. Foundation of Roman Catholic cathedral, Roeland-street, laid; cost £12,148—Oct. 6. British garrison withdrawn from Natal. Proclamation of Pretorius declaring Natal the property of the South African Volksraad. Attack by the Natal emigrant boers on the Amabaxa Kafirs under Napier: 3,000 head of cattle, 250 sheep, and 17 little boys and girls captured—Dec.
1841	New system of education, recommended by Sir J. Herschel, introduced. Tower at Fort Peddie built. Military post formed at the Umgazi, to protect the chief Faku. 1,016,807 lbs. wool exported from colony. Foundation of Roman catholic church, Graham's Town, laid. Sheep-farming on the increase on eastern frontier.
1842	Expedition under Captain Smith leaves the Umgazi for Natal, overland—Jan. Death of the Kafir chief Tyali, and disturbances in Kafirland relative to queen Sutu—May. Public library opened in Graham's Town—May. British force arrives at Natal—May 3. Fearful murder case in Graaff-Reinet; Jacob Rabie killed by his wife and her paramour, Liebenberg, who are executed—May 14. Night attack of British force on boers' camp and their repulse—May 23. British force besieged by emigrant boers. Relief of British camp by 25th regiment, under Colonel Cloete—June 24. Submission of Natal boers to British government—July 5. The <i>Arion</i> , <i>Galatea</i> , and <i>Speedy</i> lost in a north-west gale in Table Bay—July 13. Spanish ship <i>Sabina</i> wrecked on Cape Recife, 21 souls lost—Aug. 10. Military post at Trumpeter's Drift built. Cavalry barracks at Fort Peddie built. Convict ship <i>Waterloo</i> and troop ship <i>Abercrombie Robinson</i> wrecked in Table Bay; 194 lives lost—Aug. 28. Violent north-west gale in Table Bay; five vessels go ashore—Sept. 10. Mr. Montagu appointed colonial secretary—Sept. 28. Judge Menzies being on circuit, at Colesberg, crosses the Orange River and proclaims the country, to 25° south latitude, British territory—Oct. 22. The emigrant boers under Pretorius prepare to attack the Griquas. Expedition under Colonel Hare proceeds to Colesberg, and arrives the 31st Dec. The boers retire, and a garrison of 300 men remain at Colesberg. Conference between Adam Kok and His Honor Colonel Hare.
1843	Visitation of locusts all over the colony, even near Cape Town, where they had not been for ninety years. Comet appears—March 2. Wreck of <i>Conservative</i> on Foundling Rock—March 15.

A.D. 1843	<p>Quarrel between Kafir chiefs Gazella and Umhala—May. Com- mando enters Kafirland to punish the recusant chief Tola—June. Murder of the farmers Palmer and Brown by Kafirs, near Bathurst. First mail coach runs between Cape Town and Swellendam—Sept. Treaty between Sir G. Napier and Basutu chief Moshesh—Oct. 5. Military post at Cometjies Drift built; burnt in 1847. Villages of Richmond and Riversdale founded. Bill passed legislative council for improving roads of colony —Nov. 22; and late road board formed. First discovery of Ichaboe and other guano islands, on west coast—Dec. Sir P. Maitland appointed governor—Dec. 19. Gordon Cumming's hunting expedition in the interior.</p>
1844	<p>Slight shock of an earthquake at Cape—Feb. 26. Convicts removed from Robben Island and employed in construction of roads. Cape Gas Company, Colonial Bank, and Equitable Fire Insur- ance Company instituted. Abolition of port dues in colonial ports. Discovery of a large guano deposit on Malagas Island, Saidanha Bay. Rogge Bay battery granted to the municipality. Theatre in Hottentot-square converted into a chapel for colored races. Trinity church commenced. Issue of letters patent annexing Natal to Cape colony—March 31. Completion of large tunnel for irrigation at Hankey mission station—April. Military posts at Botha Post and Post Retief built. General uneasiness amongst Kafir tribes. Dutch farmer De Lange shot by Kafir marauders. Montagu bridge opened and hard road over flats commenced—July 1. Public offices in town of George destroyed by fire—July 30. His Excellency Sir P. Maitland visits frontier; meeting with Congo chiefs at Fort Peddie—Sept. 19. Conference at Fort Beaufort with Dutch farmers—Sept. 30. Post Victoria founded in neutral territory.</p>
1845	<p>Emigrant boers having attacked the Griquas, a military force is sent to their assistance, under the command of Colonel Richard- son, 7th Dragoon Guards, who defeats the boers at Zwartkopjes, north of Orange River, after which they surrender and give up their arms—Apr. 29. Natal made a distinct colony—April 30. Sir P. Maitland makes treaties with Tslambie and Gaika chiefs, Tambookies, and Griquas, which abrogate the Stockenstrom treaties. Foundation-stone of gas-works laid—Oct. 8. Major Warden appointed British resident in the country north of the Orange River. Opening of hard road over Cape Flats— Dec. 24. Cape of Good Hope Mutual Life Assurance Society founded. Martin West, Esq., first lieut.-governor of Natal.</p>
1846	<p>War party in Kafirland gets predominant. A military post being about to be instituted at Block Drift, Kafirs show much uneasiness. Great meeting at Block Drift between Kafir chiefs and His Honor Colonel Hare—Jan. 29; upwards of 5,000 armed Kafirs present. One of Tola's Kafirs steals an axe from a shop in Fort Beaufort; he is sent to the prison in Graham's Town, but rescued on the way near Dans Hooghte, and the prisoner he is tied to is killed in the scuffle. Tola refuses to surrender the escaped man. Sir P. Maitland proceeds to the frontier. Proclamation declaring war against Kafirs. Kafir chief Macomo wishes to remain a prisoner, but is forcibly turned out of Fort Beaufort. Troops from Fort Beaufort take the field—April 11. British forces attacked by the Kafirs at Burns' Hill, in the Amatola—April 15; and sixty-three wagons captured by the enemy. Post Victoria abandoned and burnt. Martial law proclaimed—April 22.</p>

A.D. 1846	<p>Forty-one wagons captured by the enemy near Trumpeter's Drift—May 21. Fort Peddie attacked by the Kafirs under Umhala, Seyolo, and Pato—May 27. Battle of the Gwanga, and defeat of the Kafirs by General Somerset—June 7. General attack on the Amatola strongholds—July. Military post at Fort Hare established, and town of Alice founded. Commando into Kreli's country under Sir A. Stockenstrom and Lieut.-Colonel Johnstone—Aug. 21. Sir P. Maitland advances towards the Great Kei River, and suffers much from want of supplies. Country suffers much from drought. Supplies commenced to be landed at Waterloo Bay. Macomo surrenders himself—Nov. 25. Sandilli surrenders. Chief Pato holds out in the difficult country near the Kei. Colonel Hare retires from the lieutenant-governorship of the eastern frontier. Port Elizabeth Bank founded.</p>
1847	<p>His Excellency Sir H. Pottinger appointed governor of colony—Jan. 27. Cape Town lighted with gas—March 5. Frontier Commercial and Agricultural Bank founded. Union Bank founded. Sir H. Young, lieutenant-governor of frontier—April 28. Renewal of hostilities with Kafirs, and failure of an expedition to seize Sandilli—Oct. Hard road over Cape Flats completed; cost £43,022—Oct. 30. Establishment of military villages. King William's Town re-established, and declared head-quarters of British Kaffraria. New line of military posts in British Kaffraria. Port of East London established—Dec. Sir H. Smith governor of colony—Dec. 1; he lands at Port Elizabeth—Dec. 14, and has an interview with Macomo, and proceeds to King William's Town. Proclamations defining the colonial boundary, and forming province of British Kaffraria and division of Victoria—Dec. 23 and 28. Meeting of Sir H. Smith and Kafir chiefs at King William's Town—Dec. 23.</p>
1848	<p>Great meeting of Sir H. Smith and Kafir chiefs at King William's Town—Jan. 7. Foundation stone of light-house on Cape L'Agulhas laid—Jan. 8. Division of Albert formed. Opening of Montagu, formerly Cradock, Pass—Jan. 18; cost £35,709. Sir H. Smith travels overland to Natal <i>via</i> Colesberg; meets Moshesh at Winburg—Jan. 27; reaches Pietermaritzburg—Feb. 9; embarks for East London, and arrives in Cape Town, <i>via</i> Graham's Town—March 1. Proclamation of Sir H. Smith, declaring Queen's supremacy over country north of Orange River—Feb. 3. Fearful floods on the frontier; stone bridge at Fort Beaufort seriously injured—Feb. 7. Bishop Gray, first bishop of Cape Town, arrives—Feb. 20. Botanic Gardens founded—May 2. Postage reduced to an uniform rate. Village of Smithfield founded. Stamp duty on newspapers abolished—June 27. Completion of measurement of arc of meridian by Mr. Maclear. Formation of Fort Beaufort into a separate division. A. Pretorius persuades Dutch emigrant boers to resist British supremacy in the country north of Orange River. Major Warden resident. Proclamation offering £1,000 for apprehension of Pretorius—Aug. 27. Sir H. Smith passes Orange River to attack boers. Battle of Boomplaats—August 30. Boers defeated and submit. Pretorius and his followers cross the Vaal River, and found Transvaal Republic. Bloemfontein made seat of British resident. Order in council issued authorizing Secretary of State to send convicts to certain colonies.</p>



A. D. 1848	Opening of Mitchell's Pass, formerly Mostert's Hoek—Dec. 1. Proclamation allowing public meetings to take place without sanction of chief local magistrate—Dec. 12. Lighthouse on Cape L'Agulhas completed.
1849	Lighthouse on Cape L'Agulhas lighted—March 1. Part of old prison pulled down—April 3. Great anti-convict meeting in Cape Town—May 20. Dr. Livingstone starts from Kolobeng with Messrs. Oswell and Murray in June, in search of Lake Ngami (reaches it, August 1). Synkonyella, Mantatee chief, attacks Moshesh and Molitsani—July 24. During last three years, 2,959 emigrants arrive in the Cape colony at public expense. Equitable Marine Assurance Company established. Letters patent of Her Majesty arrive in colony, granting constitution—Aug. 21. Anti-convict agitation. Ship <i>Neptune</i> , with convicts, arrives in Simon's Bay; convicts not allowed to land—Sept. 19. Four members of Legislative Council—Messrs. Brand, Reitz, Stockenstrom, and Fairbairn—resign, in consequence of a resolution to proceed to other business before considering constitution ordinance—Sept. 21.
1850	Order in council published, revoking that making the Cape a penal settlement—Feb. 13. Anti-convict association formally dissolved—Feb. 14. <i>Neptune</i> , convict ship, sails from Simon's Bay—Feb. 20. Dr. Livingstone sets out on his second journey to Lake Ngami, and discovers the Leambye, or Zambezi River—April. Dr. G. Atherstone fixes longitude of Graham's Town—April 17. Public meeting and petition to Queen for representative government—April 23. Considerable excitement prevails in Kafirland through the prophecies of the impostor Umlangeni. Government notice of appointment of new legislative council to consider new constitution of Cape—May 6. Shock of earthquake in Graham's Town—May 21. Galton and Andersson, travelers, arrive in the Cape, on their way to Damara and Ovampoland—June 23. Major Warden, assisted by Synkonyella, attacks Molitsani, who takes refuge in Moshesh's country, and it is determined to demand satisfaction of Moshesh—Sept. 18. Sir H. Smith proceeds to the frontier—October. Meeting of Kafir chiefs—Oct. 26. Sandilli refuses to appear, and is deposed. Sir H. Smith moves forward to Fort Cox—Dec. 14. Armed patrol proceeds in search of Sandilli, Dec. 24; and is attacked by Kafirs, and suffers severe loss. Military villages burnt and settlers massacred by Kafirs—Dec. 25. Queen Sutu appointed regent of Gaika tribes. £500 reward offered for Sandilli—Dec. 26. Kafir police begin to desert—Dec. 28. Sir H. Smith shut up in Fort Cox; an attempt to relieve by Colonel Somerset fails—Dec. 29. Sir H. Smith succeeds in leaving Fort Cox, and reaches King William's Town—Dec. 31. Disaffection amongst the Hottentots at Kat River.
1851	Attack of Kafirs on Fort White—Jan. 3. Attack of the Kafir chief Hermanus on Fort Beaufort, Jan. 7; he is killed, and attack repulsed. Mail steamer <i>Bosphorus</i> , first of postal line, arrives in Table Bay—Jan. 26. Rebellion of the Kat River Hottentots. Desertion of seventy soldiers of Cape Mounted Rifles to the enemy. Fort Armstrong attacked and destroyed by General Somerset, who breaks up Kat River settlement—Feb. 22. Shiloh Hottentots proclaimed rebels. Chief Pato remains faithful. Hostilities with Tambookies under Mapassa. Mission of Sir A. Stockenstrom and Mr. Fairbairn to England—March 23.

A. D. 1851	<p>Destruction of mission station of Shiloh; captured by a burgher force under Captain Tylden, R. E. Lighthouse on Cape Receife lighted—April 1. Great fire in woods near Newlands—April 7; several houses burnt. Captain Tylden defeats a large force of Tambookies near the Imvani—April 15. Kafirs enter colony and overrun the frontier districts—June. Commission appointed to inquire into Kat River rebellion—June 3. Most extraordinary and interesting confession of a Kafir murderer, Kwaxena, to Mr. Fynn, British resident at Palmerston—June 18 (<i>Vide Commercial Advertiser</i>, Aug. 2). Hottentots of Graham's Town disarmed and their huts burned—June 29. Major Warden and native commando attacks Molitsani, and is defeated—June 30. Kafirs occupy the Waterkloof and forest districts near Fort Beaufort—July. Major Warden, British resident at Bloemfontein, proclaims Moshesh and Molitsani as enemies—Aug. 5. Death of Dr. Philip, L.M.S. Attack on 2nd Regiment, near Double Drift, by Kafirs; two officers, four non-commissioned officers, and seventeen men killed. Attack on Kafirs at Waterkloof—Oct. 16. Hottentot levy disarmed at Alice—Oct. 22. Commissioners Hogge and Owen proceed to Orange River Sovereignty. Attack on Kafirs in Waterkloof; death of Colonel Fordyce, 74th Regiment—Nov. 6. Ordinance for constituting a parliament for the Cape colony promulgated—Nov. 26. Affairs between Basutus and government of Sovereignty in a very unsatisfactory state. Commissioners arrive at Bloemfontein—Dec. 27.</p>
1852	<p>Traveler Galton embarks at Walvisch Bay for England—Jan. 6. Convention between Messrs. Hogge and Owen and Transvaal boers, acknowledging their independence—Jan. 15. Great fire at Newlands—23rd Jan. Total loss of H.M.S. <i>Birkenhead</i>, near Danger Point, 9 officers and 349 men perish—Feb 26. Martin's church opened—March 16. General Cathcart arrives as governor—March 31. Sir H. Smith leaves colony—April 17. Death of Rev. J. Read—May 8. Proclamation declaring that the governor was about to proceed to Orange River territory, to settle matters there. Dr. Livingstone, having returned to the Cape from his second journey, sets out on his third journey—April, and finally reaches St. Paul de Loando—20th May, 1856. Death of Major Hogge—June 7. Proclamation of the governor against Kreli—July 1. Grand attack on Waterkloof—July 6 to 8. Livingstone sets out on his second journey, from Kuruman, on 20th Nov., and reaches Linyanti on 23rd May, 1853. Commandant Schutte orders the missionaries Inglis and Edwards to leave their stations at Mosiga and Malotza, in the Transvaal territory—Nov. 28. Boers attack mission station of Kolobeng and destroy it. His Excellency Sir G. Cathcart arrives at Platberg, and demands from chief Moshesh 10,000 head of cattle and 1,000 horses, within three days—Dec. 13, as compensation for robberies committed by his people in Sovereignty. Interview between Sir G. Cathcart and Moshesh—Dec. 15. Moshesh not having complied with the demands made on him, is attacked by the British forces. Battle of Berea—Dec. 20. Moshesh sues for peace—Dec. 21.</p>
1853	<p>Proclamation of peace with chief Kreli—Feb. 14. Foundation-stone of St. John's church, Rogge Bay, laid—Feb. 24. Date of proclamation extending the royal mercy and pardon to the chief Sandilli and the Gaika people—March 2.</p>

A.D. 1853	<p>Martial law revoked—March 23. Date of proclamation to inquire into the participation of the Hottentot community in late Kat River rebellion—March 25. New village of Robertson formed—May 4. Date of governor Cathcart's famous minute on his measures to restore and preserve peace on the frontier. District of Queen's Town formed—May 20. Sir G. Clerk leaves Cape Town for the Sovereignty—June 10. Death of Commandant-general A. Pretorius, president of the Transvaal republic—July 23. C. J. Anderssen reaches Lake Ngami from the west coast, Walvisch Bay—July 27. Death of Umlangeni, the Kafir prophet—Sept. 4. Opening of Wellington Bridge and Bain's Kloof—Sept. 13. Death of Mr. Montagu, colonial secretary, in London; last colonial rhinoceros shot near Grass Ridge—Nov. 4.</p>
1854	<p>Commencement of copper mining excitement in Cape Town. Cape of Good Hope Mining Company formed. South African Mining Company resuscitated—Jan. Death of Bishop Devereaux. Immense excitement in mining speculations—Feb. 11. Orange River Sovereignty given up by the British government, and provisional government of present Free State proclaimed—Feb. 23. General Jackson arrives—March 1. Cape Commercial Bank formed—March 17. Date of Sir G. Clerk's notice, publishing order of Queen in Council, renouncing authority over Orange River territory—April 8. General Sir G. Cathcart resigns the command of Her Majesty's forces in the colony to General Jackson—April 15. Cape Commercial Bank commences business—May 10. J. Hoffman appointed president of Free State—May 15. Sir G. Cathcart leaves for England—May 26. Hon'ble R. W. Rawson appointed colonial secretary—27th May. Death of Sir P. Maitland, formerly governor of Cape—May 30. Opening of first Cape parliament—July 1. North-west gale in Table Bay; <i>Canopus</i>, <i>Wild Sea-mew</i>, and <i>Seagull</i> stranded—July 15. First printing by steam at Cape Town, Cape of Good Hope—Aug. 10. Wreck of troop-ship <i>Charlotte</i>, in Algoa Bay; 97 lives lost—Sept. 20. First establishment of Church of England mission leaves King William's Town for Umhala's kraal—Oct. 13. Battle of Inkermann and death of Sir G. Cathcart—Nov. 5. Arrival of His Excellency Sir G. Grey, as governor of this colony—Dec. 5. Departure of Lieutenant-governor Darling—Dec. 12.</p>
1855	<p>A small smack of fifteen tons, the <i>Mystery</i>, arrives in Simon's Bay, on its way to Australia, which it safely reaches. Commercial Marine Insurance Company established—Jan 26. Second session of colonial parliament opened by Sir G. Grey—March 13. Foundation-stone of Albany hospital laid by General Jackson—May 16. The traveler F. Green starts from Lake Ngami and penetrates to the north-west as far as Lebebe. Boshof declared president of Free State—June 10. Trustees of South African Museum elected—July 7. Foundation-stone of St. Andrew's church, Graham's Town, laid—Aug. 15. Foundation-stone of new prison laid—Sept. 24. Village of Heidelberg founded—Nov. 22. Cape Royal Rifle Corps formed—Nov. 28. Village of Murraysburg formed—December 5. Great fire at Protea—Dec. 14. Illumination in Cape Town, for fall of Sebastopol—Dec. 19.</p>
1856	<p>Extraordinary heavy falls of rain on the Stormberg mountains, near Burghersdorp, causing the death of 100,000 sheep—Feb. 13.</p>

A.D. 1856	<p>Death of Sir H. Pottinger, formerly governor of the colony, at Malta—March 18. Murray's bequest of £5,000 to the South African College becomes available—April 8. Destructive fire at Rondebosch: several houses burnt; Cape insurance offices suffer losses of nearly £15,000—April 22. Tragedy of Leo Cox in Free State; his wife and children being found murdered—April 26, he is tried and executed for same on Nov. 1. Death of Bishop Armstrong, of Graham's Town—May 16. Murder of Rev. Mr. Thomas, of Beechamwood, by the Amapondas, in an attack on that station. Dr. Livingstone arrives at Quillimane on his return journey—June 13. Consecration of English church at the Paarl by Bishop of Cape Town—June 15. Severe north-west gale in Table Bay; several ships go ashore—Aug. 6: Uneasiness amongst Kafir tribes, caused by prophecies of the impostor Umlakaza. Cattle-slaughtering commences. Captain Hoffman and Major Grant arrive to make preparations for settling of German Legion. Natal declared a separate colony—Aug. 24. Wreck of Dutch bark <i>Japan</i>, off Gunner's Quoin; all lives lost—Oct. 3. Letter announcing death of Swedish traveler Wahlberg, beyond Lake Ngami, by an enraged elephant—Dec. 6. First detachment of German Legion arrives in Table Bay—Dec. 29. Horse-sickness and lung-sickness in oxen prevail in many parts of the colony to an immense extent in 1854-5-6.</p>
1857	<p>Sanguinary battles fought in the Zulu country, between the followers of Ketchwya and his father, Panda, the Zulu king; 20,000 lives lost. Head-quarters of German Legion arrives in Table Bay, and proceeds thence to East London—Jan. 28. Opening of Lady Grey's bridge over the Berg River, at the Paarl—May 19. Village of Hamburg formed by the German settlers, near the mouth of the Kieskamma—May 27. Severe north-west gale in Table Bay; nine vessels, twenty cargo-boats, and seven small boats driven ashore. Extensive floods at Simon's Town, which do great damage to private property—June 7 and 8. Another severe gale in Table Bay; two vessels stranded—June 14. Another severe gale in Table Bay; cutter <i>Fox</i>, three cargo and several small boats stranded. Severe weather all along the coast—July 20. Unprecedented fall of snow in the Eastern Province—July 26. First troops, the 89th Regiment, embark for India, in consequence of the news of the revolt there, followed at intervals by the Royal Artillery, 6th, 13th, 60th, 73rd, and 80th Regiments. The Cape Royal Rifles commence doing garrison duty—August 7. Shock of earthquake at Cape, eleven P.M.—August 14. Mysterious murder of Lucy Walker, in Bree-street, Cape Town. Light-houses for Cape Point and Simon's Town arrive in Simon's Bay—August 19. His Excellency the American ambassador, Reid, touches, in the <i>Minnesota</i>, steamer, at Table Bay, on his way to China—Sept. 7. Admiral of the station, Sir F. Grey, arrives here in the <i>Trident</i>—Oct. 16. Kafir chief Macomo sentenced to death at Fort Hare for murder. His sentence commuted to twenty years' confinement; and is eventually sent to Robben Island—Nov. 17. Progress of famine amongst Kafir nation and immense immigration into colony.</p>
1858	<p>Opening of road through Meiring's Poort. Kafir chiefs Macomo, Vadanna, Quesha, and Xayimpi sent to Robben Island—March 3. Foundation-stone of new library and museum laid—March 23.</p>



A.D.  
1858

Basutu war; mission station at Beersheba burnt—March 24. Skirmish before Thaba Bosigo and end of Basutu war. Foundation-stone of Independent church, Caledon-square, laid—April. Arrival of Dr. Livingstone and exploring expedition from England—April 21. Public dinner to Dr. Livingstone—April 28. The emigrant ship *Gipsy Bride* arrives in Table Bay—May 12. Terrible fire at Port Elizabeth—May 15. Up to this date 3,200 horses sent to India—June 24. Commission appointed to fix the unit of colonial land measure—June 25. Death of Mr. E. Gregory, lost on Table Mountain—June 27. New divisions of Murraysburg, Fraserburg, Humansdorp, and Robertson, formed. The governor announces his intention of granting 200 farms in British Kaffraria—July 12. Board of public examiners created—July 26. News arrives from Mr. C. Anderssen, the traveler, who had failed in reaching the Cunene River—Aug. 11. Small pox breaks out in Cape Town—Aug. 23. Brilliant comet appears—Oct. 10. Treaty of peace between Free State and Basutus—Oct. 12. Foundation of town-hall, Port Elizabeth, laid—Oct. 18. Succession of fires in Cape Town—Nov. 19 to 23. Election for members of legislative council, second Cape parliament—Nov. 25. Total wreck of the steamer *Madagascar*, near Beka River—Dec. 3. Old road board dissolved, and new road law comes into operation—Dec. 31. Kafir chief Tola killed by a party of frontier police. Gradual breaking up of power of Kafir chiefs and dispersion of tribes. Kafir chief Pato convicted of horse-stealing; now a resident in Somerset Hospital, and blind.

#### ADDENDA.

The following events of interest were collected too late for insertion in their proper places.

- 1619 Resolution of the Chamber of Seventeen declaring the advisability of founding a fort at the Cape of Good Hope, for the assurance of the refreshment necessary to the navigation of India and the preservation of the seafaring people, which is of much importance—Aug. 19.
- 1654 A mineral found at the Cape, and tested by silversmiths, declared better than tin—Jan. 28.
- 1659 Breeding of European sheep mentioned in a proclamation. "The freemen to be allowed to have European sheep, but not to slaughter any until they shall possess at least fifty"—Aug. 27.
- 1660 Proclamation on the wreck of the *Maréchal*, with Roman catholic bishop on board, declaring "That no divine worship except that of the Reformed church is to be permitted"—May 22.
- 1665 Horses bred in the colony offered for sale by the government—Feb. 21. Riebeeck's property sold, "101 morgen cultivated land, under the Bosch Heuvel," with the "Schuur" thereupon (probably the place Westbrook, now the property of A. de Smidt, Esq)—Nov. 24.
- 1679 Government gardens planted.
- 1680 A special placaat against the planting of tobacco by the colonists, on the ground that tobacco is bartered with the Hottentots for ivory and cattle, to the detriment of the honorable company; confiscation of the tobacco and pecuniary penalties for the first and second offences, public whipping for the third—April 8.

A. D.	
1682	Placaat against duelling—Jan. 23. Placaat prohibiting tradesmen to carry knives or other sharp weapons—Feb. 27.
1683	A storm is noted, of twelve days and nights, on the bank of L'Agulhas—April 10.
1688	An expedition, by land, under Isaak Schyver, ordered to proceed to Rio de la Goa, to explore the country—Dec. 24.
1689	Proprietors of land, in the country, ordered to plant one hundred young oaks on each grant—July 18.
1706	Proceedings of governor W. A. van der Stell against Du Toit and others, for sedition and conspiracy—June.
1708	Proclamation of governor van Assenburg, restoring to their rights as burghers, &c., all persons who had been proceeded against and punished by van der Stell—April.
1709	False Bay surveyed and declared a safe harbor.
1711	Building of old gaol commenced—March.
1714	Debt registry established—June 19. Educational arrangements made for the colony. Matters to be taught:—"The Lord's prayer, commandments, creeds, prayers for morning and evening, grace before and after meals, and the catechism;" no books to be used except those authorized in Holland. Schoolmasters, &c., to signify their assent to the articles of the synod of Dordrecht—Aug. 21.
1720	Expedition directed to proceed to Rio de la Goa and Natal, and there form settlements—Dec. 10.
1723	Report received that the establishment at Rio de la Goa was in a bad state, and robbed by pirates—July 12. Orders given to strengthen fort—Sept. 16.
1724	Orders issued to examine minerals at De la Goa—May 22.
1726	The establishment at Rio de la Goa amounted to two hundred souls. Great anxiety to conceal from the English the real state of De la Goa. A sample of oil sent to Europe.
1727	Experiments on gold dust from Rio de la Goa found to be sand.
1729	Orders received from Europe to abandon Rio de la Goa, but to examine previously where two parcels of gold dust were obtained. Thirty Europeans massacred there.
1730	Establishment at Rio de la Goa finally abandoned—June 11.
1731	Decree issued for an expedition to Terra de Natal, which fails.
1732	Quitrent, freehold, and loan possession defined—Feb. 18.
1742	Five Hottentots having been baptized by the Moravian missionary Schmidt, he was, by a resolution of the government, prohibited from baptizing Hottentots for the future. In 1743 he is compelled to leave the Cape. In this year a parish clerk, accused by the churchwardens of heresy and of being associated with the great Hottentot converter, as Schmidt was designated, is ordered to Batavia.
1744	Order binding the youngest attorneys to practice for the church fund without fee.
1745	Attempt to construct a stone breakwater or wall in Table Bay.
1756	Trade continues to be carried on with Rio de la Goa. 5,800 lbs. of ivory imported from Rio de la Goa.
1782	Paper notes of two stivers each issued—June 25. Proclamation of van Plettenberg against forged notes in circulation.
1808	Government discount bank formed.
1810	Iron water pipes first laid down in Cape Town.
1822	Great storm in Table Bay; seven ships go ashore; sixty-nine houses and stores seriously injured—July 19 to 21.
1850	Name of Heerengracht changed to Adderley-street.
1854	Name of Keizersgracht changed to Darling-street.

## [ IV ]

Revenue and Expenditure of the Cape Colony from 1835 to 1857,  
from 1st January to 31st December:

Year.	Revenue.	Expenditure.	Year.	Revenue.	Expenditure.
1835	£133,417	£134,576	1846	£201,624	£189,494
1836	158,697	147,579	1847	222,013	193,688
1837	167,037	145,816	1848	234,375	245,985
1838	188,459	168,508	1849	237,805	274,235
1839	174,845	192,688	1850	245,785	245,655
1840	171,205	181,653	1851	234,884	221,285
1841	179,590	172,422	1852	289,482	252,495
1842	226,261	226,025	1853	308,472	268,111
1843	221,721	250,266	1854	295,802	312,521
1844	229,604	223,460	1855	306,026	360,040
1845	247,369	223,672	1856	348,362	333,151
		Year end. June 30,	1857	376,990	320,320
		Ditto ditto	1858	404,026	374,628

## [ V ]

Staple Articles, the produce of the Colony of Cape of Good  
Hope, exported in Year ending 5th January, 1847:

ARTICLES.	CAPE TOWN.		PORT ELIZABETH.	
	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.
Aloes..... lbs.	127,152	£1,456	86,578	£890
Argol..... "	60,000	990	..	..
Beef and pork..... casks	3,610	9,583	1,196	3,851
Whalebone..... lbs.	2,721	164	1,130	100
Butter..... "	42,001	3,173	39,764	2,634
Candles..... "	24,900	935	399	10
Corn, barley..... muids	2,384	1,287	15	15
Beans and peas..... "	949	1,058	..	..
Bran..... lbs.	353,195	1,432	..	..
Flour..... "	754,422	7,900	2,016	18
Oats..... muids	678	410	230	80
Wheat..... "	240	242	..	..
Ostrich feathers..... lbs.	1,063	6,271	264	1,384
Dried fish..... "	1,316,266	6,627	73,559	574
Dried fruits..... "	255,612	3,833	..	..
Green fruits..... "	5,800	50	..	..
Hides..... no.	20,479	13,288	40,358	19,489
Horns..... "	46,823	735	36,827	509
Horses..... "	485	16,888	5	140
Ivory..... lbs.	18,056	3,319	10,286	2,053
Mules..... no.	9	135	4	80
Oil, whale..... galls.	184	11	2,400	200
Skins, calf..... no.	88	10	32	16
goat..... "	104,806	9,724	125,358	12,925
Carried forward.....	...	£89,521	...	£44,968

ARTICLES.	CAPE TOWN.		PORT ELIZABETH.	
	Quantity.	Value.	Quantity.	Value.
Brought forward.....	..	£89,521	..	£44,968
Skins, seal..... no.	315	116	145	72
"  sheep..... "	241,440	9,537	8,509	256
Spirits, brandy..... galls.	4,947	653	..	..
Tallow..... lbs.	34,727	608	113,244	1,883
Wax..... "	60	1	2,783	167
Wine, constantia..... galls.	2,822	2,417	..	..
"  ordinary..... "	507,946	37,739	409	45
Wool..... lbs.	1,082,191	64,693	2,188,937	113,318
Total.....	..	£205,285	..	£160,709
Other articles.....	..	22,730	..	9,580
Total.....	..	£228,015	..	£170,289
		170,289		
Total of colonial produce	..	£398,304	..	..

Staple Articles, the produce of the Colony of Cape of Good Hope, exported in Year ending 30th September, 1858:

ARTICLES.	Quantity.	Value.
Aloes..... cwts.	5,903	£8,911
Copper ore..... tons	3,862	113,000
Barley..... qrs.	785	1,829
Beans and peas..... "	771	2,152
Bran..... lbs.	113,345	508
Flour..... "	791,168	10,261
Oats..... qrs.	2,299	4,068
Wheat..... "	32	160
Fish, dried..... lbs.	1,803,213	10,185
Fruit, .. "	1,787,951	33,054
Hides..... no.	71,949	61,344
Horses..... "	3,529	117,702
Skins, goat..... "	452,306	59,319
"  sheep..... "	967,095	81,766
Wine, constantia..... galls.	6,505	2,929
"  ordinary..... "	770,015	124,996
Wool..... lbs.	17,670,359	1,096,177
Other articles.....	..	76,343
Total exports for year ending 30th Sept., 1858	..	£1,804,704
Total exports for year ending 5th Jan., 1847	..	398,304
Increase of value of exports during last 11 years	..	£1,406,400
IMPORTS.		
Declared value of imports into the colony of Cape of Good Hope for year ending 30th Sept., 1858	..	£2,524,242
Ditto ditto ending 5th Jan., 1847	..	1,123,061
Increase of value of imports during last 11 years	..	£1,401,181



## [ VI ]

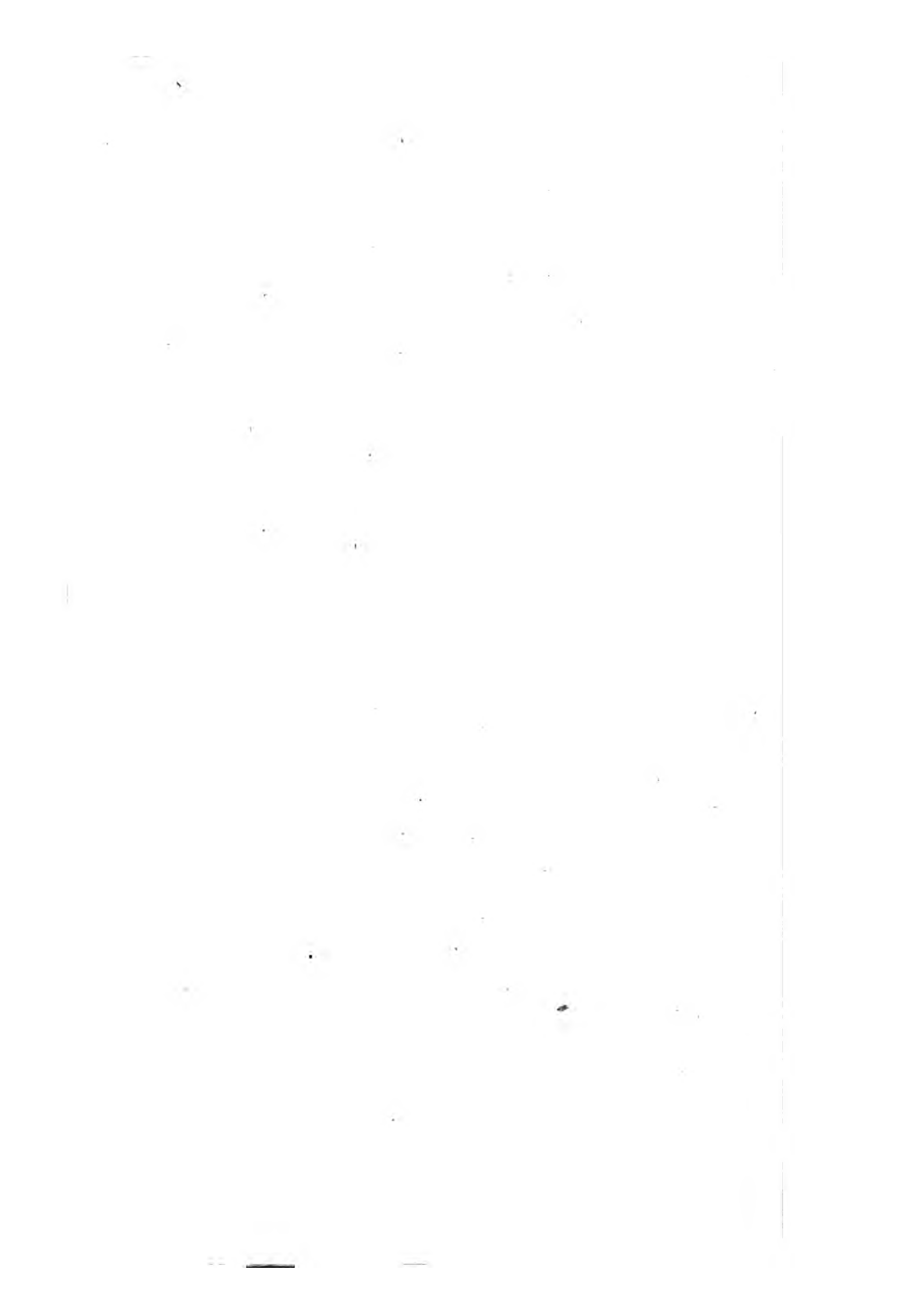
Table showing the Distances of the principal Towns and Villages of the Cape Colony, Natal, Orange Free State, and Transvaal Republic, from the four chief Towns of the Colony.

NAME OF TOWN OR VILLAGE.	DISTANCE FROM			
	Cape Town.	Port Elizabeth.	Graham's Town.	Graaff-Reinet.
<i>Cape Colony.</i>				
Albert, Prince .....	282	300	377	230
Alice.....	652	143	52	154
Aliwal North.....	666	306	216	196
Aliwal South.....	270	225	380	380
Beaufort, Fort.....	631	131	46	142
Beaufort West.....	330	280	297	150
Bedford.....	582	150	160	102
Burghersdorp.....	630	296	206	170
Caledon.....	70	430	515	490
Calvinia.....	300	656	547	400
Ceres.....	75	463	552	405
Clanwilliam.....	160	573	662	515
Colesberg.....	540	310	245	140
Cradock.....	550	180	115	70
George.....	290	195	295	350
Graaff-Reinet.....	480	170	150	...
Graham's Town.....	585	85	...	150
Hope Town.....	600	395	480	225
Humansdorp.....	430	70	155	240
Malmesbury.....	45	492	577	450
Middelburg.....	552	222	175	72
Paarl.....	38	465	550	442
Port Elizabeth.....	500	...	85	170
Queen's Town.....	{ *640 } { †720 }	205	120	160
Richmond.....	450	245	225	75
Riversdale.....	202	298	383	444
Robertson.....	100	400	485	450
Seymour.....	655	155	70	166
Simon's Town.....	24	524	609	504
Somerset East.....	547	125	80	70
Springbokfontein.....	396	730	747	600
Stellenbosch.....	26	480	565	456
Swellendam.....	140	360	445	466
Tulbagh.....	80	458	543	423
Victoria.....	410	300	300	150
Uitenhage.....	500	18	78	152
Wellington.....	45	472	557	435
Worcester.....	80	420	505	410

\* By Beaufort West and Karroo.

† By Graham's Town.

NAME OF TOWN OR VILLAGE.	DISTANCE FROM			
	Cape Town.	Port Elizabeth.	Graham's Town.	Graaff-Reinet.
<i>British Kaffraria.</i>				
King William's Town.....	680	165	80	230
<i>Natal.</i>				
Pietermaritzberg .....	1,136	910	826	790
<i>Orange Free State.</i>				
Bloemfontein.....	680	470	385	280
Smithfield.....	696	336	246	226
<i>Transvaal.</i>				
Mooi River Dorp.....	960	720	640	560
Zoutpansberg .....	1,300	1,160	900	980
<i>Betjouanaland.</i>				
Kuruman.....	870	560	540	390
Kolobeng.....	1,150	840	820	670
Lake Ngami .....	1,700	1,390	1,370	1,220



—





